

# Orchestrating Microbiome Analysis

**Authors:** Leo Lahti [aut], Sudarshan Shetty [aut], Tuomas  
Borman [aut, cre], Felix GM Ernst [aut] **Version:** 0.98.10  
**Modified:** 2022-10-05 **Compiled:** 2022-10-06 **Environment:** R  
version 4.2.1 (2022-06-23), Bioconductor 3.15 **License:** CC  
BY-NC-SA 3.0 US **Copyright:** Source:  
<https://github.com/microbiome/OMA>



# Contents

<b>Welcome</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>I Introduction</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>1 Introduction</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>2 Microbiome Data</b>	<b>13</b>
2.1 Data science framework . . . . .	13
2.2 Data containers . . . . .	15
2.3 Loading experimental microbiome data . . . . .	22
2.4 Demonstration data . . . . .	35
Session Info . . . . .	37
<b>3 Packages</b>	<b>41</b>
3.1 Package installation . . . . .	41
3.2 Some available packages . . . . .	41
Session Info . . . . .	42
<b>II Focus Topics</b>	<b>43</b>
<b>4 Data Manipulation</b>	<b>45</b>
4.1 Tidying and subsetting . . . . .	45
4.2 Merge data . . . . .	56

<b>5 Exploration and quality Control</b>	<b>59</b>
5.1 Abundance . . . . .	59
5.2 Prevalence . . . . .	61
5.3 Quality control . . . . .	65
Session Info . . . . .	72
<b>6 Taxonomic Information</b>	<b>77</b>
6.1 Assigning taxonomic information. . . . .	77
6.2 Functions to access taxonomic information . . . . .	78
6.3 Data agglomeration . . . . .	82
6.4 Data transformation . . . . .	83
6.5 Pick specific . . . . .	86
Session Info . . . . .	86
<b>7 Community diversity</b>	<b>89</b>
7.1 Estimation . . . . .	90
7.2 Visualization . . . . .	96
Session Info . . . . .	97
<b>8 Community similarity</b>	<b>99</b>
8.1 Explained variance . . . . .	100
8.2 Community comparisons by beta diversity analysis . . . . .	102
8.3 Other ordination methods . . . . .	104
8.4 Visualizing the most dominant genus on PCoA . . . . .	111
8.5 Further reading . . . . .	117
Session Info . . . . .	117
<b>9 Community composition</b>	<b>121</b>
9.1 Visualizing taxonomic composition . . . . .	121
Session Info . . . . .	124

<b>CONTENTS</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>10 Community typing (clustering)</b>	<b>127</b>
10.1 Hiearchical clustering . . . . .	127
10.2 K-means clustering . . . . .	131
10.3 Dirichlet Multinomial Mixtures (DMM) . . . . .	133
10.4 Community Detection . . . . .	139
10.5 Bioclustering . . . . .	144
10.6 Additional Community Typing . . . . .	156
<b>11 Differential abundance</b>	<b>157</b>
11.1 Differential abundance analysis . . . . .	157
11.2 Tree-based methods . . . . .	170
Session Info . . . . .	174
<b>12 Machine learning</b>	<b>179</b>
12.1 Supervised machine learning . . . . .	179
12.2 Unsupervised machine learning . . . . .	183
Session Info . . . . .	184
<b>13 Multi-assay analyses</b>	<b>187</b>
13.1 Cross-correlation Analysis . . . . .	189
13.2 Multi-Omics Factor Analysis . . . . .	191
Session Info . . . . .	196
<b>14 Visualization</b>	<b>201</b>
14.1 Pre-analysis exploration . . . . .	202
14.2 Diversity estimation . . . . .	205
14.3 Statistical analysis . . . . .	211
Session Info . . . . .	225
<b>III Appendix</b>	<b>229</b>
<b>15 Resources</b>	<b>231</b>
15.1 Data containers . . . . .	231

15.2 R programming resources . . . . .	232
15.3 Reproducible reporting with Rmarkdown . . . . .	233
<b>16 Extra material</b>	<b>235</b>
16.1 Interactive 3D Plots . . . . .	235
16.2 PERMANOVA comparison . . . . .	237
<b>17 Acknowledgments</b>	<b>241</b>
<b>18 Exercises</b>	<b>243</b>
18.1 Workflows . . . . .	243
18.2 Data containers . . . . .	244
18.3 Data manipulation . . . . .	245
18.4 Differential abundance . . . . .	245
18.5 Alpha diversity . . . . .	246
18.6 Community composition . . . . .	247
18.7 Visualization . . . . .	247
18.8 Multiomics . . . . .	248

# Welcome

You are reading the online book, **Orchestrating Microbiome Analysis with R and Bioconductor** (Lahti et al., 2021), where we walk through common strategies and workflows in microbiome data science.

The book shows through concrete examples how you can take advantage of the latest developments in R/Bioconductor for the manipulation, analysis, and reproducible reporting of hierarchical and heterogeneous microbiome profiling data sets. The book was borne out of necessity, while updating microbiome analysis tools to work with Bioconductor classes that provide support for multi-modal data collections. Many of these techniques are generic and widely applicable in other contexts as well.

This work has been heavily influenced by other similar resources, in particular the Orchestrating Single-Cell Analysis with Bioconductor (Amezquita et al., 2020b), phyloseq tutorials (?) and microbiome tutorials (Shetty and Lahti, 2019). This book extends these resources to teach the grammar of Bioconductor workflows in the context of microbiome data science. As such, it supports the adoption of general skills in the analysis of large, hierarchical, and multi-modal data collections. We focus on microbiome analysis tools, including entirely new, partially updated as well as previously established methods.

This online resource and its associated ecosystem of microbiome data science tools are a result of a community-driven development process, and welcoming new contributors. Several individuals have contributed methods, workflows and improvements as acknowledged in the Introduction. You can find more information on how to find us online and join the developer community through the project homepage at [microbiome.github.io](https://microbiome.github.io). This online resource has been written in RMarkdown with the bookdown R package. The material is **free to use** with the Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial 3.0 License.

---



# **Part I**

# **Introduction**



# Chapter 1

## Introduction

This work - **Orchestrating Microbiome Analysis with R and Bioconductor** (Lahti et al., 2021) - contributes novel methods and educational resources for microbiome data science. It aims to teach the grammar of Bioconductor workflows in the context of microbiome data science. We show through concrete examples how to use the latest developments and data analytical strategies in R/Bioconductor for the manipulation, analysis, and reproducible reporting of hierarchical, heterogeneous, and multi-modal microbiome profiling data. The data science methodology is tightly integrated with the broader R/Bioconductor ecosystem that focuses on the development of high-quality open research software for life sciences (Gentleman et al. (2004), Huber et al. (2015)). The support for modularity and interoperability is a key to efficient resource sharing and collaborative development both within and across research fields. The central data infrastructure, the `SummarizedExperiment` data container and its derivatives, have already been widely adopted in microbiome research, single cell sequencing, and in other fields, allowing a rapid adoption and extensions of emerging data science techniques across application domains.

We assume that the reader is already familiar with R programming. For references and tips on introductory material for R and Bioconductor, see Chapter 15. This online resource and its associated ecosystem of microbiome data science tools are a result of a community-driven development process, and welcoming new users and contributors. You can find more information on how to find us online and join the developer community through the project homepage at [microbiome.github.io](https://microbiome.github.io).

The book is organized into three parts. We start by introducing the material and link to further resources for learning R and Bioconductor. We describe the key data infrastructure, the `TreeSummarizedExperiment` class that provides a container for microbiome data, and how to get started by loading microbiome data set in the context of this new framework. The second section, *Focus Topics*, covers the common steps in microbiome data analysis, beginning with the

most common steps and progressing to more specialized methods in subsequent sections. Third, *Workflows*, provides case studies for the various datasets used throughout the book. Finally, *Appendix*, links to further resources and acknowledgments.

# Chapter 2

## Microbiome Data

### 2.1 Data science framework

The building blocks of the framework are **data container** (SummarizedExperiment and its derivatives), **packages** from various developers using the TreeSE container, open **demonstration data sets**, in a separate chapter 2.4, and **on-line tutorials** including this online book as well as the various package vignettes and other material.



TreeSE image source: <https://f1000research.com/slides/9-1464>

SE image source: <https://www.bioconductor.org/packages/devel/bioc/vignettes/SummarizedExperiment/inst/doc/SummarizedExperiment.html>

MAE image source: [https://waldronlab.io/MultiAssayWorkshop/articles/Ramos\\_MultiAssayExperiment.html](https://waldronlab.io/MultiAssayWorkshop/articles/Ramos_MultiAssayExperiment.html)

SCE s image source: <http://bioconductor.org/books/3.13/OSCA/intro/the-singlecellexperiment-class.html>

## 2.2 Data containers

`SummarizedExperiment` (SE) is a generic and highly optimized container for complex data structures. It has become a common choice for analysing various types of biomedical profiling data, such as RNAseq, ChIP-Seq, microarrays, flow cytometry, proteomics, and single-cell sequencing.

`TreeSummarizedExperiment` (TreeSE) was developed as an extension to incorporate hierarchical information (such as phylogenetic trees and sample hierarchies) and reference sequences.

`MultiAssayExperiment` (MAE) provides an organized way to bind several different data structures together in a single object. For example, we can bind microbiome data (in TreeSE format) with metabolomic profiling data (in SE) format, with shared sample metadata. This is convenient and robust for instance in subsetting and other data manipulation tasks. Microbiome data can be part of multiomics experiments and analysis strategies and we want to outline the understanding in which we think the packages explained and used in this book relate to these experiment layouts using the `TreeSummarizedExperiment` and classes beyond.

This section provides an introductions to these data containers. In microbiome data science, these containers link taxonomic abundance tables with rich side information on the features and samples. Taxonomic abundance data can be obtained by 16S rRNA amplicon or metagenomic sequencing, phylogenetic microarrays, or by other means. Many microbiome experiments include multiple versions and types of data generated independently or derived from each other through transformation or agglomeration. We start by providing recommendations on how to represent different varieties of multi-table data within the `TreeSummarizedExperiment` class.

The options and recommendations are summarized in Table 2.1.

### 2.2.1 Assay data

The original count-based taxonomic abundance tables may have different transformations, such as logarithmic, Centered Log-Ratio (CLR), or relative abundance. These are typically stored in `assays`.

```
library(mia)
data(GlobalPatterns, package="mia")
tse <- GlobalPatterns
assays(tse)

## List of length 1
## names(1): counts
```

The `assays` slot contains the experimental data as count matrices. Multiple matrices can be stored the result of `assays` is actually a list of matrices.

```
assays(tse)
```

```
## List of length 1
## names(1): counts
```

Individual assays can be accessed via `assay`

```
assay(tse, "counts") [1:5,1:7]
```

```
##          CL3 CC1 SV1 M31FcsW M11FcsW M31Plmr M11Plmr
## 549322    0   0   0       0       0       0       0
## 522457    0   0   0       0       0       0       0
## 951      0   0   0       0       0       0       1
## 244423    0   0   0       0       0       0       0
## 586076    0   0   0       0       0       0       0
```

To illustrate the use of multiple assays, the relative abundance data can be calcualted and stored along the original count data using `relAbundanceCounts`.

```
tse <- relAbundanceCounts(tse)
assays(tse)
```

```
## List of length 2
## names(2): counts relabundance
```

Now there are two assays available in the `tse` object, `counts` and `relabundance`.

```
assay(tse, "relabundance") [1:5,1:7]
```

```
##          CL3 CC1 SV1 M31FcsW M11FcsW M31Plmr M11Plmr
## 549322    0   0   0       0       0       0 0.000e+00
## 522457    0   0   0       0       0       0 0.000e+00
## 951      0   0   0       0       0       0 2.305e-06
## 244423    0   0   0       0       0       0 0.000e+00
## 586076    0   0   0       0       0       0 0.000e+00
```

Here the dimension of the count data remains unchanged. This is in fact a requirement for any `SummarizedExperiment` object.

### 2.2.2 colData

colData contains data on the samples.

```
colData(tse)
```

```
## DataFrame with 26 rows and 7 columns
##           X.SampleID   Primer Final_Barcodes Barcode_truncated_plus_T
##           <factor>    <factor>      <factor>          <factor>
## CL3        CL3       ILBC_01     AACGCA            TGCCTT
## CC1        CC1       ILBC_02     AACTCG            CGAGTT
## SV1        SV1       ILBC_03     AACTGT            ACAGTT
## M31FcsW   M31FcsW  ILBC_04     AAGAGA            TCTCTT
## M11FcsW   M11FcsW  ILBC_05     AAGCTG            CAGCTT
## ...        ...       ...       ...             ...
## TS28       TS28      ILBC_25     ACCAGA            TCTGGT
## TS29       TS29      ILBC_26     ACCAGC            GCTGGT
## Even1      Even1     ILBC_27     ACCGCA            TGCGGT
## Even2      Even2     ILBC_28     ACCTCG            CGAGGT
## Even3      Even3     ILBC_29     ACCTGT            ACAGGT
##           Barcode_full_length SampleType
##           <factor>    <factor>
## CL3        CTAGCGTGCCT    Soil
## CC1        CATCGACGAGT    Soil
## SV1        GTACGCACAGT    Soil
## M31FcsW   TCGACATCTCT    Feces
## M11FcsW   CGACTGCAGCT    Feces
## ...        ...       ...
## TS28       GCATCGTCTGG    Feces
## TS29       CTAGTCGCTGG    Feces
## Even1      TGACTCTGCGG    Mock
## Even2      TCTGATCGAGG    Mock
## Even3      AGAGAGACAGG    Mock
##           Description
##           <factor>
## CL3        Calhoun South Carolina Pine soil, pH 4.9
## CC1        Cedar Creek Minnesota, grassland, pH 6.1
## SV1        Sevilleta new Mexico, desert scrub, pH 8.3
## M31FcsW   M3, Day 1, fecal swab, whole body study
## M11FcsW   M1, Day 1, fecal swab, whole body study
## ...        ...
## TS28       Twin #1
## TS29       Twin #2
## Even1      Even1
## Even2      Even2
```

```
## Even3
```

```
Even3
```

### 2.2.3 rowData

`rowData` contains data on the features of the analyzed samples. Of particular interest for the microbiome field this is used to store taxonomic information.

```
rowData(tse)
```

```
## DataFrame with 19216 rows and 7 columns
##           Kingdom      Phylum     Class      Order      Family
##           <character> <character> <character> <character> <character>
## 549322    Archaea Crenarchaeota Thermoprotei        NA        NA
## 522457    Archaea Crenarchaeota Thermoprotei        NA        NA
## 951       Archaea Crenarchaeota Thermoprotei Sulfolobales Sulfolobaceae
## 244423    Archaea Crenarchaeota          Sd-NA        NA        NA
## 586076    Archaea Crenarchaeota          Sd-NA        NA        NA
## ...         ...         ...         ...         ...         ...
## 278222    Bacteria          SR1        NA        NA        NA
## 463590    Bacteria          SR1        NA        NA        NA
## 535321    Bacteria          SR1        NA        NA        NA
## 200359    Bacteria          SR1        NA        NA        NA
## 271582    Bacteria          SR1        NA        NA        NA
##           Genus          Species
##           <character> <character>
## 549322      NA            NA
## 522457      NA            NA
## 951       Sulfolobus Sulfolobusacidocalda..
## 244423      NA            NA
## 586076      NA            NA
## ...         ...         ...
## 278222      NA            NA
## 463590      NA            NA
## 535321      NA            NA
## 200359      NA            NA
## 271582      NA            NA
```

### 2.2.4 rowTree

Phylogenetic trees also play an important role for the microbiome field. The `TreeSummarizedExperiment` class is able to keep track of feature and node relations via two functions, `rowTree` and `rowLinks`.

A tree can be accessed via `rowTree` as `phylo` object.

```
rowTree(tse)
```

```
##  
## Phylogenetic tree with 19216 tips and 19215 internal nodes.  
##  
## Tip labels:  
## 549322, 522457, 951, 244423, 586076, 246140, ...  
## Node labels:  
## , 0.858.4, 1.000.154, 0.764.3, 0.995.2, 1.000.2, ...  
##  
## Rooted; includes branch lengths.
```

The links to the individual features are available through `rowLinks`.

```
rowLinks(tse)
```

```
## LinkDataFrame with 19216 rows and 5 columns  
##   nodeLab    nodeNum nodeLab_alias    isLeaf    whichTree  
##   <character> <integer> <character> <logical> <character>  
## 1      549322        1    alias_1    TRUE    phylo  
## 2      522457        2    alias_2    TRUE    phylo  
## 3       951         3    alias_3    TRUE    phylo  
## 4     244423         4    alias_4    TRUE    phylo  
## 5     586076         5    alias_5    TRUE    phylo  
## ...       ...       ...       ...       ...  
## 19212    278222    19212  alias_19212    TRUE    phylo  
## 19213    463590    19213  alias_19213    TRUE    phylo  
## 19214    535321    19214  alias_19214    TRUE    phylo  
## 19215    200359    19215  alias_19215    TRUE    phylo  
## 19216    271582    19216  alias_19216    TRUE    phylo
```

Please note that there can be a 1:1 relationship between tree nodes and features, but this is not a must have. This means there can be features, which are not linked to nodes, and nodes, which are not linked to features. To change the links in an existing object, the `changeTree` function is available.

### 2.2.5 Alternative experiments

*Alternative experiments* differ from transformations as they can contain complementary data, which is no longer tied to the same dimensions as the assay data. However, the number of samples (columns) must be the same.

This can come into play for instance when one has taxonomic abundance profiles quantified with different measurement technologies, such as phylogenetic microarrays, amplicon sequencing, or metagenomic sequencing. Such alternative experiments that concern the same samples can be stored as

1. Separate *assays* assuming that the taxonomic information can be mapped between feature directly 1:1; or
2. data in the *altExp* slot of the *TreeSummarizedExperiment*, if the feature dimensions differ. Each element of the *altExp* slot is a *SummarizedExperiment* or an object from a derived class with independent feature data.

As an example, we show how to store taxonomic abundance tables agglomerated at different taxonomic levels. However, the data could as well originate from entirely different measurement sources as long as the samples are matched.

```
# Agglomerate the data to Phylum level
tse_phylum <- agglomerateByRank(tse, "Phylum")
# both have the same number of columns (samples)
dim(tse)

## [1] 19216    26

dim(tse_phylum)

## [1] 67 26

# Add the new table as an alternative experiment
altExp(tse, "Phylum") <- tse_phylum
altExpNames(tse)

## [1] "Phylum"

# Pick a sample subset: this acts on both altExp and assay data
tse[,1:10]

## class: TreeSummarizedExperiment
## dim: 19216 10
## metadata(0):
## assays(2): counts relabundance
## rownames(19216): 549322 522457 ... 200359 271582
```

```

## rowData names(7): Kingdom Phylum ... Genus Species
## colnames(10): CL3 CC1 ... M31Tong M11Tong
## colData names(7): X.SampleID Primer ... SampleType Description
## reducedDimNames(0):
## mainExpName: NULL
## altExpNames(1): Phylum
## rowLinks: a LinkDataFrame (19216 rows)
## rowTree: 1 phylo tree(s) (19216 leaves)
## colLinks: NULL
## colTree: NULL

dim(altExp(tse[, 1:10], "Phylum"))

## [1] 67 10

```

For more details of `altExp` have a look at the Intro vignette of the `SingleCellExperiment` package (Lun and Risso, 2020).

### 2.2.6 MultiAssayExperiments

**Multiple experiments** relate to complementary measurement types, such as transcriptomic or metabolomic profiling of the microbiome or the host. Multiple experiments can be represented using the same options as alternative experiments, or by using the `MultiAssayExperiment` class (Ramos and Waldron, 2020). Depending on how the datasets relate to each other the data can be stored as:

1. Separate `altExp` if the samples can be matched directly 1:1; or
2. As `MultiAssayExperiment` objects, in which the connections between samples are defined through a `sampleMap`. Each element on the `experimentsList` of an `MultiAssayExperiment` is `matrix` or `matrix`-like object including `SummarizedExperiment` objects, and the number of samples can differ between the elements.

*#TODO: Find the right dataset to explain a non 1:1 sample  
 ↵ relationship*

For information have a look at the intro vignette of the `MultiAssayExperiment` package.

**Table 2.1: Recommended options for storing multiple data tables in microbiome studies** The *assays* are best suited for data transformations (one-to-one match between samples and columns across the assays). The *alternative experiments* are particularly suitable for alternative versions of the data that are of same type but may have a different number of features (e.g. taxonomic groups); this is for instance the case with taxonomic abundance tables agglomerated at different levels (e.g. genus vs. phyla) or alternative profiling technologies (e.g. amplicon sequencing vs. shallow shotgun metagenomics). For alternative experiments one-to-one match between samples (cols) is required but the alternative experiment tables can have different numbers of features (rows). Finally, elements of the *MultiAssayExperiment* provide the most flexible way to incorporate multi-omic data tables with flexible numbers of samples and features. We recommend these conventions as the basis for methods development and application in microbiome studies.

Option	Rows (features)	Cols (samples)	Recommended
assays	match	match	Data transformations
altExp	free	match	Alternative experiments
MultiAssay	free	free (mapping)	Multi-omic experiments

## 2.3 Loading experimental microbiome data

### 2.3.1 16S workflow

Result of amplicon sequencing is large number of files that include all the sequences that were read from samples. Those sequences need to be matched with taxa. Additionally, we need to know how many times each taxa were found from each sample.

There are several algorithms to do that, and DADA2 is one of the most common. You can find DADA2 pipeline tutorial for example from here. After DADA2 portion of the tutorial is the data is stored into *phyloseq* object (Bonus: Hand-off to *phyloseq*). To store the data to *TreeSummarizedExperiment*, follow the example below.

You can find full workflow script without further explanations and comments from here

Load required packages.

```
library(mia)
library(ggplot2)
```

```

if( !require("BiocManager") ){
  install.packages("BiocManager")
  library("BiocManager")
}

if( !require("Biostrings") ){
  BiocManager::install("Biostrings")
  library("Biostrings")
}
library(Biostrings)

```

Create arbitrary example sample metadata like it was done in tutorial. Usually, sample metadata is imported as a file.

```

samples.out <- rownames(seqtab.nochim)
subject <- sapply(strsplit(samples.out, "D"), `[, 1)
gender <- substr(subject, 1, 1)
subject <- substr(subject, 2, 999)
day <- as.integer(sapply(strsplit(samples.out, "D"), `[, 2))
samdf <- data.frame(Subject=subject, Gender=gender, Day=day)
samdf$When <- "Early"
samdf$When[samdf$Day>100] <- "Late"
rownames(samdf) <- samples.out

```

Convert data into right format and create *TreeSE* object.

```

# Create a list that contains assays
counts <- t(seqtab.nochim)
counts <- as.matrix(counts)
assays <- SimpleList(counts = counts)

# Convert colData and rowData into DataFrame
samdf <- DataFrame(samdf)
taxa <- DataFrame(taxa)

# Create TreeSE
tse <- TreeSummarizedExperiment(assays = assays,
                                colData = samdf,
                                rowData = taxa
                               )

# Remove mock sample like it is also done in DADA2 pipeline
#<- tutorial

```

```
tse <- tse[ , colnames(tse) != "mock"]
```

Add sequences into *referenceSeq* slot and convert rownames into simpler format.

```
# Convert sequences into right format
dna <- Biostrings::DNAStringSet( rownames(tse) )
# Add sequences into referenceSeq slot
referenceSeq(tse) <- dna
# Convert rownames into ASV_number format
rownames(tse) <- paste0("ASV", seq( nrow(tse) ))
tse
```

```
## class: TreeSummarizedExperiment
## dim: 232 20
## metadata(0):
## assays(1): counts
## rownames(232): ASV1 ASV2 ... ASV231 ASV232
## rowData names(7): Kingdom Phylum ... Genus Species
## colnames(20): F3D0 F3D1 ... F3D9 Mock
## colData names(4): Subject Gender Day When
## reducedDimNames(0):
## mainExpName: NULL
## altExpNames(0):
## rowLinks: NULL
## rowTree: NULL
## colLinks: NULL
## colTree: NULL
## referenceSeq: a DNAStringSet (232 sequences)
```

### 2.3.2 Import from external files

Microbiome (taxonomic) profiling data is commonly distributed in various file formats. You can import such external data files as a (Tree)SummarizedExperiment object but the details depend on the file format. Here, we provide examples for common formats.

**CSV data tables** can be imported with the standard R functions, then converted to the desired format. For detailed examples, you can check the Bioconductor course material by Martin Morgan. The following example reads abundance tables, taxonomic mapping tables, and sample metadata, assuming that the input data files are properly prepared with appropriate row and column names.

```

count_file <- "data/assay_taxa.csv"
tax_file <- "data/rowdata_taxa.csv"
sample_file <- "data/coldata.csv"

# Load files
counts <- read.csv(count_file)    # Abundance table (e.g. ASV
#   ↵ data; to assay data)
tax      <- read.csv(tax_file)     # Taxonomy table (to rowData)
samples <- read.csv(sample_file)   # Sample data (to colData)

```

**Always ensure that the tables have rownames!** The *TreeSE* constructor compares rownames and makes sure that, for example, right samples are linked with right patient.

```

# Add rownames and remove an additional column
rownames(counts) <- counts$X
counts$X <- NULL

# Add rownames and remove an additional column
rownames(samples) <- samples$X
samples$X <- NULL

# Add rownames and remove an additional column
rownames(tax) <- tax$X
tax$X <- NULL

# As an example:
# If e.g. samples do not match between colData and counts table,
#   ↵ you must order
# counts based on colData
if( any( colnames(counts) != rownames(samples) ) ){
  counts <- counts[ , rownames(samples) ]
}

# And same with rowData and counts...
if( any( rownames(counts) != rownames(tax) ) ){
  counts <- counts[ rownames(tax), ]
}

```

The tables must be in correct format:

- counts → matrix
- rowData → DataFrame
- colData → DataFrame

```

# Ensure that the data is in correct format

# counts should be in matrix format
counts <- as.matrix(counts)
# And it should be added to a SimpleList
assays <- SimpleList(counts = counts)

# colData and rowData should be in DataFrame format
colData <- DataFrame(colData)
rowData <- DataFrame(rowData)

# Create a TreeSE
tse_taxa <- TreeSummarizedExperiment(assays = assays,
                                      colData = samples,
                                      rowData = tax)

tse_taxa

## class: TreeSummarizedExperiment
## dim: 12706 40
## metadata(0):
## assays(1): counts
## rownames(12706): GAYR01026362.62.2014 CVJT01000011.50.2173 ...
##   JRJTB:03787:02429 JRJTB:03787:02478
##   rowData names(7): Phylum Class ... Species OTU
##   colnames(40): C1 C2 ... C39 C40
##   colData names(6): Sample Rat ... Fat XOS
##   reducedDimNames(0):
##   mainExpName: NULL
##   altExpNames(0):
##   rowLinks: NULL
##   rowTree: NULL
##   colLinks: NULL
##   colTree: NULL

```

To construct a *MultiAssayExperiment* object, just combine multiple *TreeSE* data containers. Here we import metabolite data from the same study.

```

count_file <- "data/assay_metabolites.csv"
sample_file <- "data/coldata.csv"

# Load files
counts <- read.csv(count_file)
samples <- read.csv(sample_file)

```

```

# Add rownames and remove an additional column
rownames(counts) <- counts$X
counts$X <- NULL
rownames(samples) <- samples$X
samples$X <- NULL

# Convert into right format
counts <- as.matrix(counts)
assays <- SimpleList(concs = counts)
colData <- DataFrame(colData)

# Create a TreeSE
tse_metabolite <- TreeSummarizedExperiment(assays = assays,
                                             colData = samples)
tse_metabolite

## class: TreeSummarizedExperiment
## dim: 38 40
## metadata(0):
## assays(1): concs
## rownames(38): Butyrate Acetate ... Malonate 1,3-dihydroxyacetone
## rowData names(0):
## colnames(40): C1 C2 ... C39 C40
## colData names(6): Sample Rat ... Fat XOS
## reducedDimNames(0):
## mainExpName: NULL
## altExpNames(0):
## rowLinks: NULL
## rowTree: NULL
## colLinks: NULL
## colTree: NULL

```

Now we can combine these two experiments into *MAE*.

```

# Create an ExperimentList that includes experiments
experiments <- ExperimentList(microbiome = tse_taxa,
                               metabolite = tse_metabolite)

# Create a MAE
mae <- MultiAssayExperiment(experiments = experiments)

mae

```

```

## A MultiAssayExperiment object of 2 listed
## experiments with user-defined names and respective classes.
## Containing an ExperimentList class object of length 2:
## [1] microbiome: TreeSummarizedExperiment with 12706 rows and 40 columns
## [2] metabolite: TreeSummarizedExperiment with 38 rows and 40 columns
## Functionality:
## experiments() - obtain the ExperimentList instance
## colData() - the primary/phenotype DataFrame
## sampleMap() - the sample coordination DataFrame
## `$`, `[`, `[[` - extract colData columns, subset, or experiment
## *Format() - convert into a long or wide DataFrame
## assays() - convert ExperimentList to a SimpleList of matrices
## exportClass() - save data to flat files

```

Specific import functions are provided for:

- Biom files (see `help(mia::loadFromBiom)`)
- QIIME2 files (see `help(mia::loadFromQIIME2)`)
- Mothur files (see `help(mia::loadFromMothur)`)

### 2.3.2.1 Biom example

This example shows how Biom files are imported into a `TreeSummarizedExperiment` object.

The data is from following publication: Tengeler AC *et al.* (2020) **Gut microbiota from persons with attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder affects the brain in mice**.

The data set consists of 3 files:

- biom file: abundance table and taxonomy information
- csv file: sample metadata
- tree file: phylogenetic tree

Store the data in your desired local directory (for instance, `data/` under the working directory), and define source file paths

```

biom_file_path <- "data/Aggregated_humanization2.biom"
sample_meta_file_path <- "data/Mapping_file_ADHD_aggregated.csv"
tree_file_path <- "data/Data_humanization_phylo_aggregation.tre"

```

Now we can load the biom data into a `SummarizedExperiment` (SE) object.

```

library(mia)

# Imports the data
se <- loadFromBiom(biom_file_path)

# Check
se

## class: TreeSummarizedExperiment
## dim: 151 27
## metadata(0):
## assays(1): counts
## rownames(151): 1726470 1726471 ... 17264756 17264757
## rowData names(6): taxonomy1 taxonomy2 ... taxonomy5 taxonomy6
## colnames(27): A110 A111 ... A38 A39
## colData names(0):
## reducedDimNames(0):
## mainExpName: NULL
## altExpNames(0):
## rowLinks: NULL
## rowTree: NULL
## colLinks: NULL
## colTree: NULL

```

The `assays` slot includes a list of abundance tables. The imported abundance table is named as “counts”. Let us inspect only the first cols and rows.

```
assays(se)$counts[1:3, 1:3]
```

```

##          A110   A111   A12
## 1726470  17722 11630     0
## 1726471  12052      0 2679
## 17264731        0   970     0

```

The `rowdata` includes taxonomic information from the biom file. The `head()` command shows just the beginning of the data table for an overview.

`knitr::kable()` is for printing the information more nicely.

```
head(rowData(se))
```

```

## DataFrame with 6 rows and 6 columns
##           taxonomy1           taxonomy2           taxonomy3

```

```

##           <character>      <character>      <character>
## 1726470 "k__Bacteria" p__Bacteroidetes c__Bacteroidia
## 1726471 "k__Bacteria" p__Bacteroidetes c__Bacteroidia
## 17264731 "k__Bacteria" p__Bacteroidetes c__Bacteroidia
## 17264726 "k__Bacteria" p__Bacteroidetes c__Bacteroidia
## 1726472 "k__Bacteria" p__Verrucomicrobia c__Verrucomicrobiae
## 17264724 "k__Bacteria" p__Bacteroidetes c__Bacteroidia
##                      taxonomy4          taxonomy5      taxonomy6
##           <character>      <character>      <character>
## 1726470   o__Bacteroidales f__Bacteroidaceae g__Bacteroides"
## 1726471   o__Bacteroidales f__Bacteroidaceae g__Bacteroides"
## 17264731   o__Bacteroidales f__Porphyromonadaceae g__Parabacteroides"
## 17264726   o__Bacteroidales f__Bacteroidaceae g__Bacteroides"
## 1726472 o__Verrucomicrobiales f__Verrucomicrobiaceae g__Akkermansia"
## 17264724   o__Bacteroidales f__Bacteroidaceae g__Bacteroides"

```

These taxonomic rank names (column names) are not real rank names. Let's replace them with real rank names.

In addition to that, the taxa names include, e.g., '“k\_\_’ before the name, so let's make them cleaner by removing them.

```

names(rowData(se)) <- c("Kingdom", "Phylum", "Class", "Order",
                         "Family", "Genus")

# Goes through the whole DataFrame. Removes '.*[kpcofg]__' from
# strings, where [kpcofg]
# is any character from listed ones, and .* any character.
rowdata_modified <- BiocParallel::bplapply(rowData(se),
                                             FUN =
                                             stringr::str_remove,
                                             pattern =
                                             '.*[kpcofg]__')

# Genus level has additional '\'', so let's delete that also
rowdata_modified <- BiocParallel::bplapply(rowdata_modified,
                                             FUN =
                                             stringr::str_remove,
                                             pattern = '\'')

# rowdata_modified is a list, so it is converted back to
# DataFrame format.
rowdata_modified <- DataFrame(rowdata_modified)

```

```
# And then assigned back to the SE object
rowData(se) <- rowdata_modified

# Now we have a nicer table
head(rowData(se))

## DataFrame with 6 rows and 6 columns
##           Kingdom      Phylum      Class      Order
##           <character> <character> <character> <character>
## 1726470    Bacteria  Bacteroidetes  Bacteroidia Bacteroidales
## 1726471    Bacteria  Bacteroidetes  Bacteroidia Bacteroidales
## 17264731   Bacteria  Bacteroidetes  Bacteroidia Bacteroidales
## 17264726   Bacteria  Bacteroidetes  Bacteroidia Bacteroidales
## 17264727   Bacteria  Verrucomicrobia Verrucomicrobiae Verrucomicrobiales
## 17264724   Bacteria  Bacteroidetes  Bacteroidia Bacteroidales
##           Family      Genus
##           <character> <character>
## 1726470    Bacteroidaceae Bacteroides
## 1726471    Bacteroidaceae Bacteroides
## 17264731   Porphyromonadaceae Parabacteroides
## 17264726    Bacteroidaceae Bacteroides
## 17264727  Verrucomicrobiaceae Akkermansia
## 17264724    Bacteroidaceae Bacteroides
```

We notice that the imported biom file did not contain the sample meta data yet, so it includes an empty data frame.

```
head(colData(se))

## DataFrame with 6 rows and 0 columns
```

Let us add a sample metadata file.

```
# We use this to check what type of data it is
# read.table(sample_meta_file_path)

# It seems like a comma separated file and it does not include
# headers
# Let us read it and then convert from data.frame to DataFrame
# (required for our purposes)
sample_meta <- DataFrame(read.table(sample_meta_file_path, sep =
# ",", header = FALSE))
```

```
# Add sample names to rownames
rownames(sample_meta) <- sample_meta[,1]

# Delete column that included sample names
sample_meta[,1] <- NULL

# We can add headers
colnames(sample_meta) <- c("patient_status", "cohort",
                           "patient_status_vs_cohort", "sample_name")

# Then it can be added to colData
colData(se) <- sample_meta
```

Now `colData` includes the sample metadata.

```
head(colData(se))
```

```
## DataFrame with 6 rows and 4 columns
##   patient_status      cohort patient_status_vs_cohort sample_name
##   <character> <character>           <character> <character>
## A110        ADHD    Cohort_1       ADHD_Cohort_1     A110
## A12        ADHD    Cohort_1       ADHD_Cohort_1     A12
## A15        ADHD    Cohort_1       ADHD_Cohort_1     A15
## A19        ADHD    Cohort_1       ADHD_Cohort_1     A19
## A21        ADHD    Cohort_2       ADHD_Cohort_2     A21
## A23        ADHD    Cohort_2       ADHD_Cohort_2     A23
```

Now, let's add a phylogenetic tree.

The current data object, `se`, is a `SummarizedExperiment` object. This does not include a slot for adding a phylogenetic tree. In order to do this, we can convert the `SE` object to an extended `TreeSummarizedExperiment` object which includes also a `rowTree` slot.

`TreeSummarizedExperiment` contains also other additional slots and features which is why we recommend to use `TreeSE`.

```
tse <- as(se, "TreeSummarizedExperiment")
# tse includes same data as se
tse
```

```
## class: TreeSummarizedExperiment
## dim: 151 27
```

```

## metadata(0):
## assays(1): counts
## rownames(151): 1726470 1726471 ... 17264756 17264757
## rowData names(6): Kingdom Phylum ... Family Genus
## colnames(27): A110 A12 ... A35 A38
## colData names(4): patient_status cohort patient_status_vs_cohort
##   sample_name
## reducedDimNames(0):
## mainExpName: NULL
## altExpNames(0):
## rowLinks: NULL
## rowTree: NULL
## colLinks: NULL
## colTree: NULL

```

Next, let us read the tree data file and add it to the R data object (tse).

```

# Reads the tree file
tree <- ape::read.tree(tree_file_path)

# Add tree to rowTree
rowTree(tse) <- tree

# Check
tse

## class: TreeSummarizedExperiment
## dim: 151 27
## metadata(0):
## assays(1): counts
## rownames(151): 1726470 1726471 ... 17264756 17264757
## rowData names(6): Kingdom Phylum ... Family Genus
## colnames(27): A110 A12 ... A35 A38
## colData names(4): patient_status cohort patient_status_vs_cohort
##   sample_name
## reducedDimNames(0):
## mainExpName: NULL
## altExpNames(0):
## rowLinks: a LinkDataFrame (151 rows)
## rowTree: 1 phylo tree(s) (151 leaves)
## colLinks: NULL
## colTree: NULL

```

Now `rowTree` includes a phylogenetic tree:

```
head(rowTree(tse))
```

### 2.3.3 Conversions between data formats in R

If the data has already been imported in R in another format, it can be readily converted into `TreeSummarizedExperiment`, as shown in our next example. Note that similar conversion functions to `TreeSummarizedExperiment` are available for multiple data formats via the `mia` package (see `makeTreeSummarizedExperimentFrom*` for phyloseq, Biom, and DADA2).

```
library(mia)

# phyloseq example data
data(GlobalPatterns, package="phyloseq")
GlobalPatterns_phyloseq <- GlobalPatterns
GlobalPatterns_phyloseq

## phyloseq-class experiment-level object
## otu_table() OTU Table: [ 19216 taxa and 26 samples ]
## sample_data() Sample Data: [ 26 samples by 7 sample variables ]
## tax_table() Taxonomy Table: [ 19216 taxa by 7 taxonomic ranks ]
## phy_tree() Phylogenetic Tree: [ 19216 tips and 19215 internal nodes ]

# convert phyloseq to TSE
GlobalPatterns_TSE <-
  makeTreeSummarizedExperimentFromPhyloseq(GlobalPatterns_phyloseq)
  ↵
GlobalPatterns_TSE

## class: TreeSummarizedExperiment
## dim: 19216 26
## metadata(0):
## assays(1): counts
## rownames(19216): 549322 522457 ... 200359 271582
## rowData names(7): Kingdom Phylum ... Genus Species
## colnames(26): CL3 CC1 ... Even2 Even3
## colData names(7): X.SampleID Primer ... SampleType Description
## reducedDimNames(0):
## mainExpName: NULL
## altExpNames(0):
## rowLinks: a LinkDataFrame (19216 rows)
## rowTree: 1 phylo tree(s) (19216 leaves)
```

```
## colLinks: NULL
## colTree: NULL
```

We can also convert `TreeSummarizedExperiment` objects into `phyloseq` with respect to the shared components that are supported by both formats (i.e. taxonomic abundance table, sample metadata, taxonomic table, phylogenetic tree, sequence information). This is useful for instance when additional methods are available for `phyloseq`.

```
# convert TSE to phyloseq
GlobalPatterns_phyloseq2 <-
  makePhyloseqFromTreeSummarizedExperiment(GlobalPatterns_TSE)
GlobalPatterns_phyloseq2

## phyloseq-class experiment-level object
## otu_table() OTU Table: [ 19216 taxa and 26 samples ]
## sample_data() Sample Data: [ 26 samples by 7 sample variables ]
## tax_table() Taxonomy Table: [ 19216 taxa by 7 taxonomic ranks ]
## phy_tree() Phylogenetic Tree: [ 19216 tips and 19215 internal nodes ]
```

Conversion is possible between other data formats. Interested readers can refer to the following functions: \* `makeTreeSummarizedExperimentFromDADA2` \* `makeSummarizedExperimentFromBiom` \* `loadFromMetaphlan` \* `readQZA`

## 2.4 Demonstration data

Open demonstration data for testing and benchmarking purposes is available from multiple locations. This chapter introduces some options. The other chapters of this book provide ample examples about the use of the data.

### 2.4.1 Package data

The `mia` R package contains example data sets that are direct conversions from the alternative `phyloseq` container to the `TreeSummarizedExperiment` container.

List the available datasets in the `mia` package:

```
library(mia)
data(package="mia")
```

Load the `GlobalPatterns` data from the `mia` package:

```
data("GlobalPatterns", package="mia")
GlobalPatterns

## class: TreeSummarizedExperiment
## dim: 19216 26
## metadata(0):
## assays(1): counts
## rownames(19216): 549322 522457 ... 200359 271582
## rowData names(7): Kingdom Phylum ... Genus Species
## colnames(26): CL3 CC1 ... Even2 Even3
## colData names(7): X.SampleID Primer ... SampleType Description
## reducedDimNames(0):
## mainExpName: NULL
## altExpNames(0):
## rowLinks: a LinkDataFrame (19216 rows)
## rowTree: 1 phylo tree(s) (19216 leaves)
## colLinks: NULL
## colTree: NULL
```

Check the documentation for this data set:

```
## Help on topic 'GlobalPatterns' was found in the following packages:
##
##   Package           Library
##   phyloseq          /_w/_temp/Library
##   mia               /_w/_temp/Library
##
## 
## Using the first match ...
```

## 2.4.2 ExperimentHub data

ExperimentHub provides a variety of data resources, including the microbiomeDataSets package.

A table of the available data sets is available through the `availableDataSets` function.

```
library(microbiomeDataSets)
availableDataSets()
```

```
##             Dataset
## 1  GrieneisenTSData
```

```
## 2     HintikkaX0Data
## 3     LahtiMLData
## 4     LahtiMData
## 5     LahtiWAData
## 6     OKeefeDSData
## 7 SilvermanAGutData
## 8     SongQAData
## 9     SrockettTHData
```

All data are downloaded from ExperimentHub and cached for local re-use. Check the man pages of each function for a detailed documentation of the data contents and references. Let us retrieve a *MultiAssayExperiment* data set:

```
mae <- HintikkaX0Data()
```

Data is available in *SummarizedExperiment*, `r Biocpkg("TreeSummarizedExperiment")`, and `r Biocpkg("MultiAssayExperiment")` data containers; see the separate page on alternative containers for more details.

### 2.4.3 Other data sources

The curatedMetagenomicData is an independent source that provides various example data sets as `(Tree)SummarizedExperiment` objects. This resource provides curated human microbiome data including gene families, marker abundance, marker presence, pathway abundance, pathway coverage, and relative abundance for samples from different body sites. See the package homepage for more details on data availability and access.

As one example, let us retrieve the Vatanen (2016) (Vatanen et al., 2016) data set. This is a larger collection with a bit longer download time.

```
library(curatedMetagenomicData)
tse <- curatedMetagenomicData("Vatanen*", dryrun = FALSE, counts
                           = TRUE)
```

## Session Info

View session info

```
R version 4.2.1 (2022-06-23)
Platform: x86_64-pc-linux-gnu (64-bit)
Running under: Ubuntu 20.04.4 LTS
```

```

Matrix products: default
BLAS:   /usr/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/openblas-pthread/libblas.so.3
LAPACK: /usr/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/openblas-pthread/liblapack.so.3

locale:
[1] LC_CTYPE=en_US.UTF-8        LC_NUMERIC=C
[3] LC_TIME=en_US.UTF-8        LC_COLLATE=en_US.UTF-8
[5] LC_MONETARY=en_US.UTF-8     LC_MESSAGES=en_US.UTF-8
[7] LC_PAPER=en_US.UTF-8       LC_NAME=C
[9] LC_ADDRESS=C               LC_TELEPHONE=C
[11] LC_MEASUREMENT=en_US.UTF-8 LC_IDENTIFICATION=C

attached base packages:
[1] stats4      stats       graphics  grDevices  utils      datasets  methods
[8] base

other attached packages:
[1] microbiomeDataSets_1.1.7      phyloseq_1.40.0
[3] BiocManager_1.30.18            ggplot2_3.3.6
[5] mia_1.5.16                   MultiAssayExperiment_1.22.0
[7] TreeSummarizedExperiment_2.1.4 Biostrings_2.64.1
[9] XVector_0.36.0                SingleCellExperiment_1.18.1
[11] SummarizedExperiment_1.26.1   Biobase_2.56.0
[13] GenomicRanges_1.48.0          GenomeInfoDb_1.32.4
[15] IRanges_2.30.1                S4Vectors_0.34.0
[17] BiocGenerics_0.42.0           MatrixGenerics_1.8.1
[19] matrixStats_0.62.0-9003       BiocStyle_2.24.0
[21] rebook_1.6.0

loaded via a namespace (and not attached):
[1] AnnotationHub_3.4.0          BiocFileCache_2.4.0
[3] plyr_1.8.7                  igraph_1.3.5
[5] lazyeval_0.2.2               splines_4.2.1
[7] BiocParallel_1.30.3          scater_1.24.0
[9] digest_0.6.29                foreach_1.5.2
[11] yulab.utils_0.0.5            htmltools_0.5.3
[13] viridis_0.6.2                fansi_1.0.3
[15] magrittr_2.0.3               memoise_2.0.1
[17] ScaledMatrix_1.4.1           cluster_2.1.4
[19] DECIPHER_2.24.0              colorspace_2.0-3
[21] blob_1.2.3                  rappdirs_0.3.3
[23] ggrepel_0.9.1                xfun_0.33
[25] dplyr_1.0.10                 crayon_1.5.2
[27] RCurl_1.98-1.9               jsonlite_1.8.2
[29] graph_1.74.0                 survival_3.4-0

```

```
[31] iterators_1.0.14
[33] glue_1.6.2
[35] zlibbioc_1.42.0
[37] BiocSingular_1.12.0
[39] scales_1.2.1
[41] Rcpp_1.0.9
[43] viridisLite_0.4.1
[45] tidytree_0.4.1
[47] rsvd_1.0.5
[49] dir.expiry_1.4.0
[51] pkgconfig_2.0.3
[53] scuttle_1.6.3
[55] dbplyr_2.2.1
[57] AnnotationDbi_1.58.0
[59] tidyselect_1.1.2
[61] reshape2_1.4.4
[63] BiocVersion_3.15.2
[65] cachem_1.0.6
[67] DirichletMultinomial_1.38.0
[69] RSQLite_2.2.18
[71] ade4_1.7-19
[73] biomformat_1.24.0
[75] fastmap_1.1.0
[77] knitr_1.40
[79] purrr_0.3.4
[81] nlme_3.1-159
[83] mime_0.12
[85] beeswarm_0.4.0
[87] curl_4.3.2
[89] interactiveDisplayBase_1.34.0
[91] tibble_3.1.8
[93] lattice_0.20-45
[95] vegan_2.6-2
[97] multtest_2.52.0
[99] pillar_1.8.1
[101] rhdf5filters_1.8.0
[103] data.table_1.14.2
[105] irlba_2.3.5.1
[107] R6_2.5.1
[109] bookdown_0.29
[111] vipor_0.4.5
[113] MASS_7.3-58.1
[115] rhdf5_2.40.0
[117] GenomeInfoDbData_1.2.8
[119] parallel_4.2.1
[121] beachmat_2.12.0
[31] ape_5.6-2
[33] gtable_0.3.1
[35] DelayedArray_0.22.0
[37] Rhdf5lib_1.18.2
[39] DBI_1.1.3
[41] xtable_1.8-4
[43] decontam_1.16.0
[45] bit_4.0.4
[47] httr_1.4.4
[49] ellipsis_0.3.2
[51] XML_3.99-0.11
[53] CodeDepends_0.6.5
[55] utf8_1.2.2
[57] later_1.3.0
[59] rlang_1.0.6
[61] munsell_0.5.0
[63] tools_4.2.1
[65] cli_3.4.1
[67] generics_0.1.3
[69] ExperimentHub_2.4.0
[71] evaluate_0.16
[73] stringr_1.4.1
[75] yaml_2.3.5
[77] bit64_4.0.5
[79] KEGGREST_1.36.3
[81] sparseMatrixStats_1.8.0
[83] compiler_4.2.1
[85] filelock_1.0.2
[87] png_0.1-7
[89] treeio_1.20.2
[91] stringi_1.7.8
[93] Matrix_1.5-1
[95] permute_0.9-7
[97] vctrs_0.4.2
[99] lifecycle_1.0.2
[101] BiocNeighbors_1.14.0
[103] bitops_1.0-7
[105] httpuv_1.6.6
[107] promises_1.2.0.1
[109] gridExtra_2.3
[111] codetools_0.2-18
[113] assertthat_0.2.1
[115] withr_2.5.0
[117] mgcv_1.8-40
[119] grid_4.2.1
[121] tidyverse_1.2.1
```

```
[123] rmarkdown_2.16  
[125] shiny_1.7.2
```

```
DelayedMatrixStats_1.18.1  
ggbeeswarm_0.6.0
```

# Chapter 3

## Packages

### 3.1 Package installation

Several R packages provide methods for the analysis and manipulation of `SummarizedExperiment` and related data containers. One of these is `mia`. The installation for this and other packages has the following procedure.

Stable Bioconductor release version can be installed with:

```
BiocManager::install("microbiome/mia")
```

Bioconductor development version requires the installation of the latest R beta version, and this is primarily recommended for those who already have solid experience with R/Bioconductor and need access to the latest experimental updates.

```
BiocManager::install("microbiome/mia", version="devel")
```

The bleeding edge (and potentially unstable) development version lives in Github:

```
devtools::install_github("microbiome/mia")
```

### 3.2 Some available packages

Some of the R packages supporting the framework include:

- mia : Microbiome analysis tools
- miaViz : Microbiome analysis specific visualization
- miaSim : Microbiome data simulations
- miaTime : Microbiome time series analysis
- philr (external)

## Session Info

View session info

```
R version 4.2.1 (2022-06-23)
Platform: x86_64-pc-linux-gnu (64-bit)
Running under: Ubuntu 20.04.4 LTS

Matrix products: default
BLAS:    /usr/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/openblas-pthread/libblas.so.3
LAPACK:  /usr/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/openblas-pthread/liblapack.so.3

locale:
[1] LC_CTYPE=en_US.UTF-8        LC_NUMERIC=C
[3] LC_TIME=en_US.UTF-8        LC_COLLATE=en_US.UTF-8
[5] LC_MONETARY=en_US.UTF-8     LC_MESSAGES=en_US.UTF-8
[7] LC_PAPER=en_US.UTF-8       LC_NAME=C
[9] LC_ADDRESS=C                LC_TELEPHONE=C
[11] LC_MEASUREMENT=en_US.UTF-8  LC_IDENTIFICATION=C

attached base packages:
[1] stats      graphics   grDevices utils      datasets  methods   base

other attached packages:
[1] BiocStyle_2.24.0 rebook_1.6.0

loaded via a namespace (and not attached):
[1] bookdown_0.29      dir.expiry_1.4.0   codetools_0.2-18
[4] XML_3.99-0.11     digest_0.6.29     stats4_4.2.1
[7] magrittr_2.0.3     evaluate_0.16    graph_1.74.0
[10] rlang_1.0.6       stringi_1.7.8    cli_3.4.1
[13] filelock_1.0.2    rmarkdown_2.16   tools_4.2.1
[16] stringr_1.4.1     xfun_0.33       yaml_2.3.5
[19] fastmap_1.1.0     compiler_4.2.1  BiocGenerics_0.42.0
[22] BiocManager_1.30.18 CodeDepends_0.6.5 htmltools_0.5.3
[25] knitr_1.40
```

## **Part II**

# **Focus Topics**



# Chapter 4

## Data Manipulation

### 4.1 Tidying and subsetting

#### 4.1.1 Tidy data

For several custom analysis and visualization packages, such as those from the `tidyverse`, the `SE` data can be converted to long data.frame format with `meltAssay`.

```
library(mia)
data(GlobalPatterns, package="mia")
tse <- GlobalPatterns
tse <- transformSamples(tse, method="relabundance")

molten_tse <- meltAssay(tse,
                         add_row_data = TRUE,
                         add_col_data = TRUE,
                         assay_name = "relabundance")
molten_tse

## # A tibble: 499,616 x 17
##   FeatureID SampleID relabund~1 Kingdom Phylum Class Order Family Genus Species
##   <fct>     <fct>      <dbl> <chr>  <chr> <chr> <chr> <chr> <chr>
## 1 549322    CL3        0 Archaea Crena~ Ther~ <NA>  <NA>  <NA>  <NA>
## 2 549322    CC1        0 Archaea Crena~ Ther~ <NA>  <NA>  <NA>  <NA>
## 3 549322    SV1        0 Archaea Crena~ Ther~ <NA>  <NA>  <NA>  <NA>
## 4 549322    M31Fcsw    0 Archaea Crena~ Ther~ <NA>  <NA>  <NA>  <NA>
## 5 549322    M11Fcsw    0 Archaea Crena~ Ther~ <NA>  <NA>  <NA>  <NA>
## 6 549322    M31Plmr    0 Archaea Crena~ Ther~ <NA>  <NA>  <NA>  <NA>
```

```

##  7 549322    M11Plmr      0 Archaea Crena~ Ther~ <NA>  <NA>  <NA>  <NA>
##  8 549322    F21Plmr      0 Archaea Crena~ Ther~ <NA>  <NA>  <NA>  <NA>
##  9 549322    M31Tong      0 Archaea Crena~ Ther~ <NA>  <NA>  <NA>  <NA>
## 10 549322    M11Tong      0 Archaea Crena~ Ther~ <NA>  <NA>  <NA>  <NA>
## # ... with 499,606 more rows, 7 more variables: X.SampleID <fct>, Primer <fct>,
## #   Final_Barcod <fct>, Barcode_truncated_plus_T <fct>,
## #   Barcode_full_length <fct>, SampleType <fct>, Description <fct>, and
## #   abbreviated variable name 1: relabundance

```

### 4.1.2 Subsetting

**Subsetting** data helps to draw the focus of analysis on particular sets of samples and / or features. When dealing with large data sets, the subset of interest can be extracted and investigated separately. This might improve performance and reduce the computational load.

Load:

- mia
- dplyr
- knitr
- data GlobalPatterns

Let us store `GlobalPatterns` into `tse` and check its original number of features (rows) and samples (columns). **Note:** when subsetting by sample, expect the number of columns to decrease; when subsetting by feature, expect the number of rows to decrease.

```

# store data into se and check dimensions
data("GlobalPatterns", package="mia")
tse <- GlobalPatterns
# show dimensions (features x samples)
dim(tse)

```

```
## [1] 19216     26
```

#### 4.1.2.1 Subset by sample (column-wise)

For the sake of demonstration, here we will extract a subset containing only the samples of human origin (feces, skin or tongue), stored as `SampleType` within `colData(tse)` and also in `tse`.

First, we would like to see all the possible values that `SampleType` can take on and how frequent those are:

	Freq
.	
Feces	4
Freshwater	2
Freshwater (creek)	3
Mock	3
Ocean	3
Sediment (estuary)	3
Skin	3
Soil	3
Tongue	2

```
# inspect possible values for SampleType
unique(tse$SampleType)
```

```
## [1] Soil          Feces         Skin          Tongue
## [5] Freshwater   Freshwater (creek) Ocean        Sediment (estuary)
## [9] Mock
## 9 Levels: Feces Freshwater Freshwater (creek) Mock ... Tongue
```

```
# show recurrence for each value
tse$SampleType %>% table()
```

**Note:** after subsetting, expect the number of columns to equal the sum of the occurrences of the samples that you are interested in. For instance, `ncols = Feces + Skin + Tongue = 4 + 3 + 2 = 9`.

Next, we *logical index* across the columns of `tse` (make sure to leave the first index empty to select all rows) and filter for the samples of human origin. For this, we use the information on the samples from the meta data `colData(tse)`.

```
# subset by sample
tse_subset_by_sample <- tse[ , tse$SampleType %in% c("Feces",
  ~ "Skin", "Tongue")]
# show dimensions
dim(tse_subset_by_sample)

## [1] 19216      9
```

As a sanity check, the new object `tse_subset_by_sample` should have the original number of features (rows) and a number of samples (columns) equal to the sum of the samples of interest (in this case 9).

Several characteristics can be used to subset by sample:

- origin
- sampling time
- sequencing method
- DNA / RNA barcode
- cohort

#### 4.1.2.2 Subset by feature (row-wise)

Similarly, here we will extract a subset containing only the features that belong to the Phyla “Actinobacteria” and “Chlamydiae”, stored as `Phylum` within `rowData(tse)`. However, subsetting by feature implies a few more obstacles, such as the presence of NA elements and the possible need for agglomeration.

As previously, we would first like to see all the possible values that `Phylum` can take on and how frequent those are:

```
# inspect possible values for Phylum
unique(rowData(tse)$Phylum)
```

```
## [1] "Crenarchaeota"      "Euryarchaeota"     "Actinobacteria"    "Spirochaetes"
## [5] "MVP-15"            "Proteobacteria"   "SBR1093"          "Fusobacteria"
## [9] "Tenericutes"        "ZB3"              "Cyanobacteria"    "GOUTA4"
## [13] "TG3"               "Chlorobi"         "Bacteroidetes"    "Caldithrix"
## [17] "KSB1"               "SAR406"           "LCP-89"            "Thermi"
## [21] "Gemmatimonadetes"  "Fibrobacteres"   "GN06"              "AC1"
```

```

## [25] "TM6"           "OP8"           "Elusimicrobia"   "NC10"
## [29] "SPAM"          NA               "Acidobacteria"  "CCM11b"
## [33] "Nitrospirae"    "NKB19"         "BRC1"           "Hyd24-12"
## [37] "WS3"            "PAUC34f"       "GN04"           "GN12"
## [41] "Verrucomicrobia" "Lentisphaerae"  "LD1"            "Chlamydiae"
## [45] "OP3"             "Planctomycetes" "Firmicutes"     "OP9"
## [49] "WPS-2"          "Armatimonadetes" "SC3"            "TM7"
## [53] "GN02"           "SM2F11"        "ABY1_OD1"      "ZB2"
## [57] "OP11"            "Chloroflexi"    "SC4"            "WS1"
## [61] "GAL15"          "AD3"            "WS2"            "Caldiserica"
## [65] "Thermotogae"    "Synergistetes"  "SR1"

```

```

# show recurrence for each value
rowData(tse)$Phylum %>% table()

```

**Note:** after subsetting, expect the number of columns to equal the sum of the recurrences of the feature(s) that you are interested in. For instance, `nrows = Actinobacteria + Chlamydiae = 1631 + 21 = 1652`.

Depending on your research question, you might need to or need not agglomerate the data in the first place: if you want to find the abundance of each and every feature that belongs to Actinobacteria and Chlamydiae, agglomeration is not needed; if you want to find the total abundance of all the features that belong to Actinobacteria or Chlamydiae, agglomeration is recommended.

**4.1.2.2.1 Non-agglomerated data** Next, we *logical index* across the rows of `tse` (make sure to leave the second index empty to select all columns) and filter for the features that fall in either Actinobacteria or Chlamydiae. For this, we use the information on the samples from the meta data `rowData(tse)`.

The first term with the `%in%` operator includes all the features of interest, whereas the second term after the AND operator `&` filters out all the features that present a NA in place of Phylum.

```

# subset by feature
tse_subset_by_feature <- tse[rowData(tse)$Phylum %in%
  c("Actinobacteria", "Chlamydiae") &
  !is.na(rowData(tse)$Phylum), ]

# show dimensions
dim(tse_subset_by_feature)

```

```

## [1] 1652   26

```

	Freq
.	
ABY1_OD1	7
AC1	1
Acidobacteria	1021
Actinobacteria	1631
AD3	9
Armatimonadetes	61
Bacteroidetes	2382
BRCA1	13
Caldiserica	3
Caldithrix	10
CCM11b	2
Chlamydiae	21
Chlorobi	64
Chloroflexi	437
Crenarchaeota	106
Cyanobacteria	393
Elusimicrobia	31
Euryarchaeota	102
Fibrobacteres	7
Firmicutes	4356

As a sanity check, the new object `tse_subset_by_feature` should have the original number of samples (columns) and a number of features (rows) equal to the sum of the features of interest (in this case 1652).

**4.1.2.2.2 Agglomerated data** When total abundances of certain Phyla are of relevance, the data is initially agglomerated by Phylum. Then, similar steps as in the case of not agglomerated data are followed.

```
# agglomerate by Phylum
tse_phylum <- tse %>% agglomerateByRank(rank = "Phylum")

# subset by feature and get rid of NAs
tse_phylum_subset_by_feature <-
  ↪ tse_phylum[rowData(tse_phylum)$Phylum %in%
  ↪ c("Actinobacteria", "Chlamydiae") &
  ↪ !is.na(rowData(tse_phylum)$Phylum), ]

# show dimensions
dim(tse_phylum_subset_by_feature)

## [1] 2 26
```

**Note:** as data was agglomerated, the number of rows equal the number of Phyla used to index (in this case, just 2)

Alternatively:

```
# store features of interest into phyla
phyla <- c("Phylum:Actinobacteria", "Phylum:Chlamydiae")
# subset by feature
tse_phylum_subset_by_feature <- tse_phylum[phyla, ]
# show dimensions
dim(tse_subset_by_feature)
```

```
## [1] 1652 26
```

The code above returns the not agglomerated version of the data.

Fewer characteristics can be used to subset by feature:

- Taxonomic rank
- Meta-taxonomic group

For subsetting by Kingdom, agglomeration does not apply, whereas for the other ranks it can be applied if necessary.

#### 4.1.2.3 Subset by sample and feature

Finally, we can subset data by sample and feature at once. The resulting subset contains all the samples of human origin and all the features of Phyla “Actinobacteria” or “Chlamydiae”.

```
# subset by sample and feature and get rid of NAs
tse_subset_by_sample_feature <- tse[rowData(tse)$Phylum %in%
  c("Actinobacteria", "Chlamydiae") &
  !is.na(rowData(tse)$Phylum), tse$SampleType %in% c("Feces",
  "Skin", "Tongue")]

# show dimensions
dim(tse_subset_by_sample_feature)
```

```
## [1] 1652     9
```

**Note:** the dimensions of `tse_subset_by_sample_feature` agree with those of the previous subsets (9 columns filtered by sample and 1652 rows filtered by feature).

If a study was to consider and quantify the presence of Actinobacteria as well as Chlamydiae in different sites of the human body, `tse_subset_by_sample_feature` might be a suitable subset to start with.

#### 4.1.2.4 Remove empty columns and rows

Sometimes data might contain, e.g., features that are not present in any of the samples. This might occur after subsetting for instance. In certain analyses we might want to remove those instances.

```
# Agglomerate data at Genus level
tse_genus <- agglomerateByRank(tse, rank = "Genus")
# List bacteria that we want to include
genera <- c("Class:Thermoprotei", "Genus:Sulfolobus",
  "Genus:Sediminicola")
# Subset data
tse_genus_sub <- tse_genus[genera, ]

tse_genus_sub
```

```
## class: TreeSummarizedExperiment
## dim: 3 26
```

```

## metadata(1): aggregated_by_rank
## assays(1): counts
## rownames(3): Class:Thermoprotei Genus:Sulfolobus Genus:Sediminicola
## rowData names(7): Kingdom Phylum ... Genus Species
## colnames(26): CL3 CC1 ... Even2 Even3
## colData names(7): X.SampleID Primer ... SampleType Description
## reducedDimNames(0):
## mainExpName: NULL
## altExpNames(0):
## rowLinks: a LinkDataFrame (3 rows)
## rowTree: 1 phylo tree(s) (19216 leaves)
## colLinks: NULL
## colTree: NULL

# List total counts of each sample
colSums(assay(tse_genus_sub, "counts"))

##      CL3     CC1     SV1   M31FcsW   M11FcsW   M31Plmr   M11Plmr   F21Plmr
##      1       0       0       1       1       0       4       1
##  M31Tong  M11Tong  LMEpi24M  SLEpi20M  AQC1cm    AQC4cm    AQC7cm    NP2
##      7       3       0       2       64      105      136      222
##  NP3      NP5  TRRsedi1  TRRsedi2  TRRsedi3    TS28      TS29    Even1
##  6433    1154      2       2       2       0       0       0
##  Even2    Even3
##      2       0

```

Now we can see that certain samples do not include any bacteria. We can remove those.

```

# Remove samples that do not have present any bacteria
tse_genus_sub <- tse_genus_sub[ , colSums(assay(tse_genus_sub,
  "counts")) != 0 ]
tse_genus_sub

## class: TreeSummarizedExperiment
## dim: 3 18
## metadata(1): aggregated_by_rank
## assays(1): counts
## rownames(3): Class:Thermoprotei Genus:Sulfolobus Genus:Sediminicola
## rowData names(7): Kingdom Phylum ... Genus Species
## colnames(18): CL3 M31FcsW ... TRRsedi3 Even2
## colData names(7): X.SampleID Primer ... SampleType Description
## reducedDimNames(0):
## mainExpName: NULL

```

```
## altExpNames(0):
## rowLinks: a LinkDataFrame (3 rows)
## rowTree: 1 phylo tree(s) (19216 leaves)
## colLinks: NULL
## colTree: NULL
```

Same thing can be done for features.

```
# Take only those samples that are collected from feces, skin, or
#   tongue
tse_genus_sub <- tse_genus[ , colData(tse_genus)$SampleType %in%
#   c("Feces", "Skin", "Tongue")]

tse_genus_sub
```

```
## class: TreeSummarizedExperiment
## dim: 1516 9
## metadata(1): agglomerated_by_rank
## assays(1): counts
## rownames(1516): Class:Thermoprotei Genus:Sulfolobus ...
##   Genus:Coprothermobacter Phylum:SR1
## rowData names(7): Kingdom Phylum ... Genus Species
## colnames(9): M31Fcsw M11Fcsw ... TS28 TS29
## colData names(7): X.SampleID Primer ... SampleType Description
## reducedDimNames(0):
## mainExpName: NULL
## altExpNames(0):
## rowLinks: a LinkDataFrame (1516 rows)
## rowTree: 1 phylo tree(s) (19216 leaves)
## colLinks: NULL
## colTree: NULL
```

```
# How many bacteria there are that are not present?
sum(rowSums(assay(tse_genus_sub, "counts")) == 0)
```

```
## [1] 435
```

We can see that there are bacteria that are not present in these samples that we chose. We can remove those bacteria from the data.

```
# Take only those bacteria that are present
tse_genus_sub <- tse_genus_sub[rowSums(assay(tse_genus_sub,
#   "counts")) > 0, ]
```

```
tse_genus_sub

## class: TreeSummarizedExperiment
## dim: 1081 9
## metadata(1): aggregated_by_rank
## assays(1): counts
## rownames(1081): Genus:Sulfolobus Order:NRP-J ...
##   Genus:Coprothermobacter Phylum:SR1
## rowData names(7): Kingdom Phylum ... Genus Species
## colnames(9): M31FcsW M11FcsW ... TS28 TS29
## colData names(7): X.SampleID Primer ... SampleType Description
## reducedDimNames(0):
## mainExpName: NULL
## altExpNames(0):
## rowLinks: a LinkDataFrame (1081 rows)
## rowTree: 1 phylo tree(s) (19216 leaves)
## colLinks: NULL
## colTree: NULL
```

### 4.1.3 Splitting

You can split data base on variables. There are available functions `splitByRanks` and `splitOn`.

`splitByRanks` splits the data based on rank. Since the elements of the output list share columns, they can be stored into `altExp`.

```
altExps(tse) <- splitByRanks(tse)
altExps(tse)
```

```
## List of length 7
## names(7): Kingdom Phylum Class Order Family Genus Species
```

If you want to split the data based on other variable than taxonomy rank, use `splitOn`. It works for row-wise and column-wise splitting.

```
splitOn(tse, "SampleType")
```

```
## List of length 9
## names(9): Soil Feces Skin Tongue ... Ocean Sediment (estuary) Mock
```

## 4.2 Merge data

`mia` package has `mergeSEs` function that merges multiple `SummarizedExperiment` objects. For example, it is possible to combine multiple `TreeSE` objects which each includes one sample.

`mergeSEs` works like `dplyr` joining functions. In fact, there are available `dplyr`-like aliases of `mergeSEs`, such as `full_join`.

```
# Take subsets for demonstrative purpose
tse1 <- tse[, 1]
tse2 <- tse[, 2]
tse3 <- tse[, 3]
tse4 <- tse[1:100, 4]

# With inner join, we want to include all shared rows. When using
#   mergeSEs function
# all the samples are always preserved.
tse <- mergeSEs(list(tse1, tse2, tse3, tse4), join = "inner")
tse

## class: TreeSummarizedExperiment
## dim: 100 4
## metadata(0):
## assays(1): counts
## rownames(100): 100679 101071 ... 71074 951
## rowData names(7): Kingdom Phylum ... Genus Species
## colnames(4): CC1 CL3 M31FcsW SV1
## colData names(7): X.SampleID Primer ... SampleType Description
## reducedDimNames(0):
## mainExpName: NULL
## altExpNames(0):
## rowLinks: a LinkDataFrame (100 rows)
## rowTree: 1 phylo tree(s) (19216 leaves)
## colLinks: NULL
## colTree: NULL

# left join preserves all the rows of the 1st object
tse <- mia::left_join(tse1, tse4, missing_values = 0)
tse

## class: TreeSummarizedExperiment
## dim: 19216 2
```

```
## metadata(0):
## assays(1): counts
## rownames(19216): 100011 100015 ... 99953 99956
## rowData names(7): Kingdom Phylum ... Genus Species
## colnames(2): CL3 M31Fcsw
## colData names(7): X.SampleID Primer ... SampleType Description
## reducedDimNames(0):
## mainExpName: NULL
## altExpNames(0):
## rowLinks: a LinkDataFrame (19216 rows)
## rowTree: 1 phylo tree(s) (19216 leaves)
## colLinks: NULL
## colTree: NULL
```

#### 4.2.1 Additional functions

- mapTaxonomy
- mergeRows/mergeCols



# Chapter 5

## Exploration and quality Control

This chapter focuses on the quality control and exploration of microbiome data and establishes commonly used descriptive summaries. Familiarizing with the peculiarities of a given data set is the essential basis for any data analysis and model building.

The dataset should not suffer from severe technical biases, and you should at least be aware of potential challenges, such as outliers, biases, unexpected patterns and so forth. Standard summaries and visualizations can help, and the rest comes with experience. The exploration and quality control can be iterative processes.

```
library(mia)
```

### 5.1 Abundance

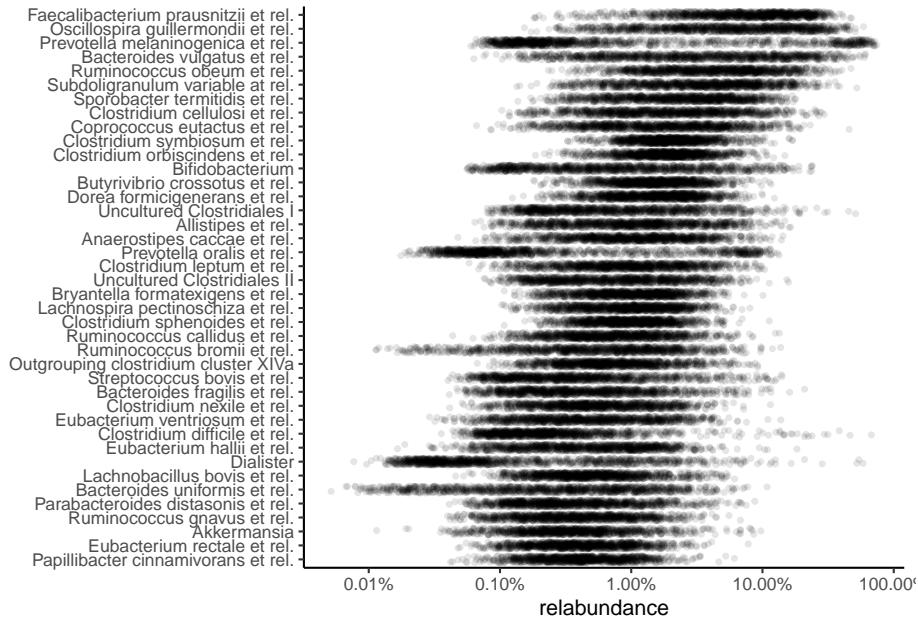
Abundance visualization is an important data exploration approach. `miaViz` offers the function `plotAbundanceDensity` to plot the most abundant taxa with several options.

In the following few demonstrations are shown, using the (Lahti et al., 2014) dataset. A Jitter plot based on relative abundance data, similar to the one presented at (Salosensaari et al., 2021) supplementary figure 1, could be visualized as follows:

```
# Loading example data
library(microbiomeDataSets)
tse <- atlas1006()
library(miaTime)
data(hitchip1006)
tse <- hitchip1006

# Add relative abundances
tse <- transformSamples(tse, method = "relabundance")

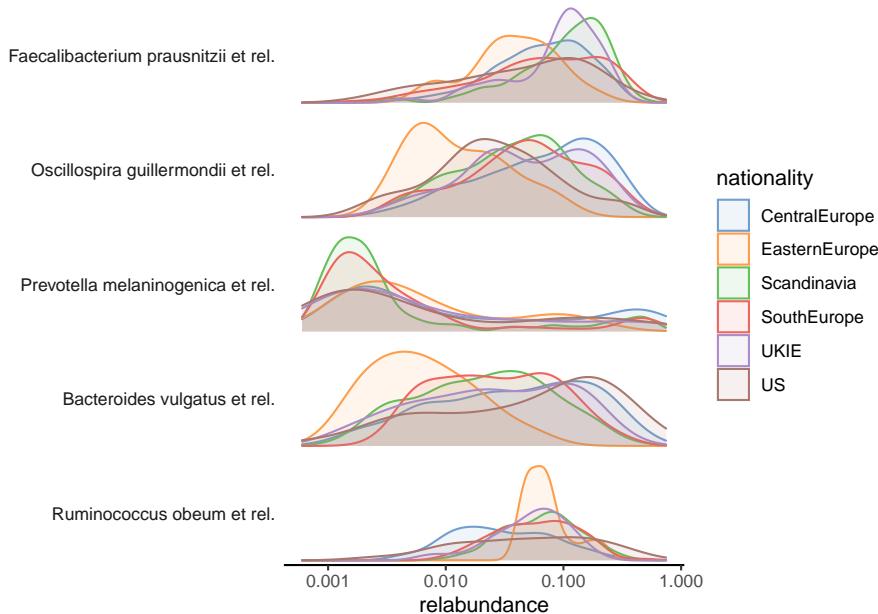
library(miaViz)
plotAbundanceDensity(tse, layout = "jitter", assay_name =
  "relabundance",
  n = 40, point_size=1, point_shape=19,
  point_alpha=0.1) +
  scale_x_log10(label=scales::percent)
```



The relative abundance values for the top-5 taxonomic features can be visualized as a density plot over a log scaled axis, with “nationality” indicated by colors:

```
plotAbundanceDensity(tse, layout = "density", assay_name =
  "relabundance",
  n = 5, colour_by="nationality",
  point_alpha=1/10) +
```

```
scale_x_log10()
```



## 5.2 Prevalence

Prevalence quantifies the frequency of samples where certain microbes were detected (above a given detection threshold). The prevalence can be given as sample size (N) or percentage (unit interval).

Investigating prevalence allows you either to focus on changes which pertain to the majority of the samples, or identify rare microbes, which may be *conditionally abundant* in a small number of samples, however.

The population prevalence (frequency) at a 1% relative abundance threshold (`detection = 1/100` and `as_relative = TRUE`), can look like this.

```
head(getPrevalence(tse, detection = 1/100, sort = TRUE,
                   as_relative = TRUE))
```

## Faecalibacterium prausnitzii et rel.	Ruminococcus obeum et rel.
## 0.9522	0.9140
## Oscillospira guillermondii et rel.	Clostridium symbiosum et rel.
## 0.8801	0.8714

```
##      Subdoligranulum variable at rel.      Clostridium orbiscindens et rel.
##                                         0.8358                               0.8315
```

The function arguments `detection` and `as_relative` can also be used to access, how many samples do pass a threshold for raw counts. Here the population prevalence (frequency) at the absolute abundance threshold (`as_relative = FALSE`) at read count 1 (`detection = 1`) is accessed.

```
head(getPrevalence(tse, detection = 1, sort = TRUE, assay_name =
  ↵ "counts",
  ↵ as_relative = FALSE))
```

```
##          Uncultured Mollicutes      Uncultured Clostridiales II
##                                         1                               1
##          Uncultured Clostridiales I      Tannerella et rel.
##                                         1                               1
## Sutterella wadsworthia et rel. Subdoligranulum variable at rel.
##                                         1                               1
```

If the output should be used for subsetting or storing the data in the `rowData`, set `sort = FALSE`.

### 5.2.1 Prevalence analysis

To investigate microbiome prevalence at a selected taxonomic level, two approaches are available.

First the data can be agglomerated to the taxonomic level and `getPrevalence` applied on the resulting object.

```
# Agglomerate taxa abundances to Phylum level, and add the new
#   table to the altExp slot
altExp(tse, "Phylum") <- agglomerateByRank(tse, "Phylum")
# Check prevalence for the Phylum abundance table from the altExp
#   slot
head(getPrevalence(altExp(tse, "Phylum"), detection = 1/100, sort
  ↵ = TRUE,
  ↵ assay_name = "counts", as_relative = TRUE))
```

```
##      Firmicutes    Bacteroidetes Actinobacteria Proteobacteria Verrucomicrobia
##      1.0000000     0.9852302     0.4821894     0.2988705     0.1277150
##      Cyanobacteria
##      0.0008688
```

Alternatively, the `rank` argument could be set to perform the agglomeration on the fly.

```
head(getPrevalence(tse, rank = "Phylum", detection = 1/100, sort
                     ← = TRUE,
                     assay_name = "counts", as_relative = TRUE))

##      Firmicutes    Bacteroidetes   Actinobacteria   Proteobacteria Verrucomicrobia
##      1.0000000     0.9852302     0.4821894     0.2988705     0.1277150
##      Cyanobacteria
##      0.0008688
```

Note that, by default, `na.rm = TRUE` is used for agglomeration in `getPrevalence`, whereas the default for `agglomerateByRank` is `FALSE` to prevent accidental data loss.

If you only need the names of the prevalent taxa, `getPrevalentTaxa` is available. This returns the taxa that exceed the given prevalence and detection thresholds.

```
getPrevalentTaxa(tse, detection = 0, prevalence = 50/100)
prev <- getPrevalentTaxa(tse, detection = 0, prevalence = 50/100,
                         rank = "Phylum", sort = TRUE)
prev
```

Note that the `detection` and `prevalence` thresholds are not the same, since `detection` can be applied to relative counts or absolute counts depending on whether `as_relative` is set `TRUE` or `FALSE`.

The function ‘`getPrevalentAbundance`’ can be used to check the total relative abundance of the prevalent taxa (between 0 and 1).

### 5.2.2 Rare taxa

Related functions are available for the analysis of rare taxa (`rareMembers`; `rareAbundance`; `lowAbundance`, `getRareTaxa`, `subsetByRareTaxa`).

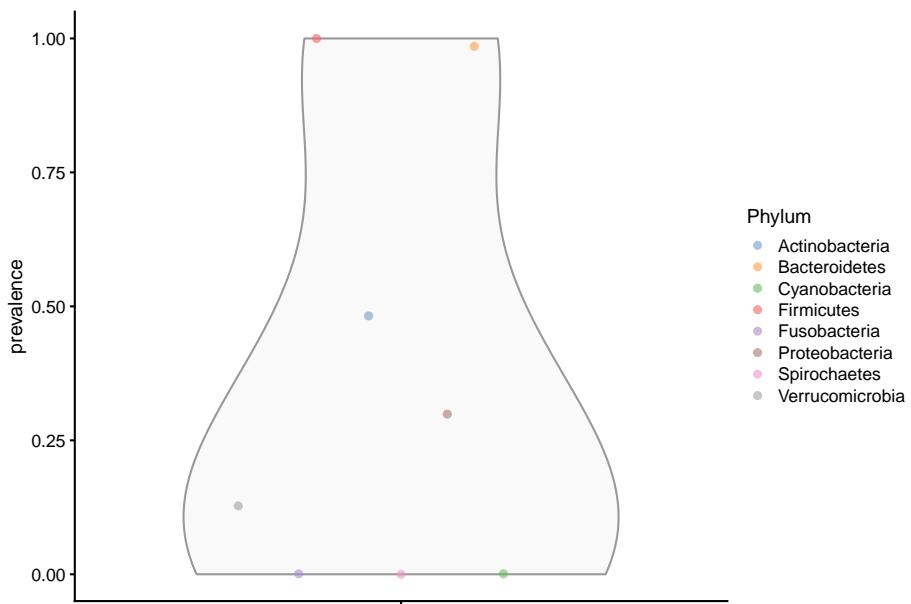
### 5.2.3 Plotting prevalence

To plot the prevalence, add the prevalence of each taxa to the `rowData`. Here, we are analysing the Phylum level abundances, which are stored in the `altExp` slot.

```
rowData(altExp(tse, "Phylum"))$prevalence <-
  getPrevalence(altExp(tse, "Phylum"), detection = 1/100, sort =
    FALSE,
    assay_name = "counts", as_relative = TRUE)
```

The prevalences can be then plotted via the plotting functions from the `scater` package.

```
library(scater)
plotRowData(altExp(tse, "Phylum"), "prevalence", colour_by =
  "Phylum")
```



The prevalence can be also visualized on the taxonomic tree with the `miaViz` package.

```
altExps(tse) <- splitByRanks(tse)
altExps(tse) <-
  lapply(altExps(tse),
    function(y){
      rowData(y)$prevalence <-
        getPrevalence(y, detection = 1/100, sort =
          FALSE,
          assay_name = "counts",
          as_relative = TRUE)})
```

```

        y
    })
top_phyla <- getTopTaxa(altExp(tse, "Phylum"),
                         method="prevalence",
                         top=5L,
                         assay_name="counts")
top_phyla_mean <- getTopTaxa(altExp(tse, "Phylum"),
                             method="mean",
                             top=5L,
                             assay_name="counts")
x <- unsplitByRanks(tse, ranks = taxonomyRanks(tse)[1:6])
x <- addTaxonomyTree(x)

```

After some preparation the data is assembled and can be plotted via `plotRowTree`.

```

library(miaViz)
plotRowTree(x[rowData(x)$Phylum %in% top_phyla,],
            edge_colour_by = "Phylum",
            tip_colour_by = "prevalence",
            node_colour_by = "prevalence")

plotRowTree(x[rowData(x)$Phylum %in% top_phyla_mean,],
            edge_colour_by = "Phylum",
            tip_colour_by = "prevalence",
            node_colour_by = "prevalence")

```

## 5.3 Quality control

Next, let us load the `GlobalPatterns` data set to illustrate standard microbiome data summaries.

```

library(mia)
data("GlobalPatterns", package="mia")
tse <- GlobalPatterns

```

### 5.3.1 Top taxa

The `getTopTaxa` identifies top taxa in the data.

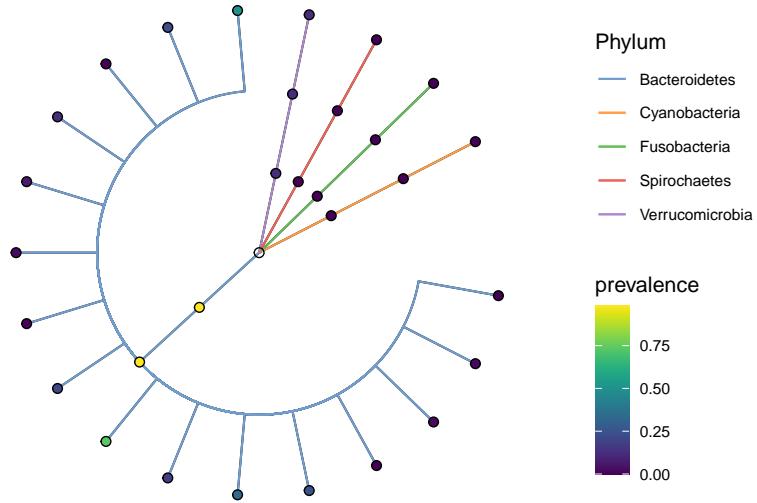


Figure 5.1: Prevalence of top phyla as judged by prevalence

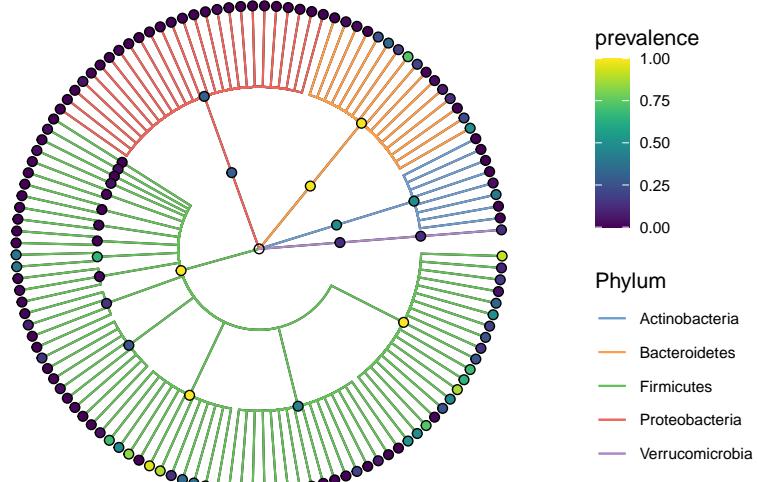


Figure 5.2: Prevalence of top phyla as judged by mean abundance

```
# Pick the top taxa
top_features <- getTopTaxa(tse, method="median", top=10)

# Check the information for these
rowData(tse)[top_features, taxonomyRanks(tse)]
```

## DataFrame with 10 rows and 7 columns

	Kingdom	Phylum	Class	Order
## 549656	Bacteria	Cyanobacteria	Chloroplast	Stramenopiles
## 331820	Bacteria	Bacteroidetes	Bacteroidia	Bacteroidales
## 317182	Bacteria	Cyanobacteria	Chloroplast	Stramenopiles
## 94166	Bacteria	Proteobacteria	Gammaproteobacteria	Pasteurellales
## 279599	Bacteria	Cyanobacteria	Nostocophycideae	Nostocales
## 158660	Bacteria	Bacteroidetes	Bacteroidia	Bacteroidales
## 329744	Bacteria	Actinobacteria	Actinobacteria	Actinomycetales
## 326977	Bacteria	Actinobacteria	Actinobacteria	Bifidobacteriales
## 248140	Bacteria	Bacteroidetes	Bacteroidia	Bacteroidales
## 550960	Bacteria	Proteobacteria	Gammaproteobacteria	Enterobacteriales
	Family	Genus	Species	
## 549656	<character>	NA	NA	NA
## 331820	Bacteroidaceae	Bacteroides		NA
## 317182	NA	NA		NA
## 94166	Pasteurellaceae	Haemophilus	Haemophilusparainflu..	
## 279599	Nostocaceae	Dolichospermum		NA
## 158660	Bacteroidaceae	Bacteroides		NA
## 329744	ACK-M1	NA		NA
## 326977	Bifidobacteriaceae	Bifidobacterium	Bifidobacteriumadole..	
## 248140	Bacteroidaceae	Bacteroides	Bacteroidescaccae	
## 550960	Enterobacteriaceae	Providencia		NA

### 5.3.2 Library size / read count

The total counts/sample can be calculated using the `perCellQCMetrics/addPerCellQC` from the `scater` package. The former one just calculates the values, whereas the latter one directly adds them to the `colData`.

```
library(scater)
perCellQCMetrics(tse)
```

## DataFrame with 26 rows and 3 columns

	sum	detected	total
--	-----	----------	-------

```

##          <numeric> <numeric> <numeric>
## CL3      864077    6964    864077
## CC1     1135457    7679   1135457
## SV1     697509    5729   697509
## M31FcsW 1543451    2667  1543451
## M11FcsW 2076476    2574  2076476
## ...       ...      ...      ...
## TS28     937466    2679   937466
## TS29     1211071    2629  1211071
## Even1    1216137    4213  1216137
## Even2    971073    3130  971073
## Even3    1078241   2776  1078241

tse <- addPerCellQC(tse)
colData(tse)

## DataFrame with 26 rows and 10 columns
##          X.SampleID Primer Final_Barcode Barcode_truncated_plus_T
##          <factor> <factor> <factor> <factor>
## CL3      CL3      ILBC_01  AACGCA      TGCAGTT
## CC1      CC1      ILBC_02  AACTCG      CGAGTT
## SV1      SV1      ILBC_03  AACTGT      ACAGTT
## M31FcsW M31FcsW ILBC_04  AAGAGA      TCTCTT
## M11FcsW M11FcsW ILBC_05  AAGCTG      CAGCTT
## ...       ...      ...      ...      ...
## TS28     TS28     ILBC_25  ACCAGA      TCTGGT
## TS29     TS29     ILBC_26  ACCAGC      GCTGGT
## Even1    Even1    ILBC_27  ACCGCA      TGCAGT
## Even2    Even2    ILBC_28  ACCTCG      CGAGGT
## Even3    Even3    ILBC_29  ACCTGT      ACAGGT
##          Barcode_full_length SampleType
##          <factor> <factor>
## CL3      CTAGCGTGCCT Soil
## CC1      CATCGACGAGT Soil
## SV1      GTACGCCACAGT Soil
## M31FcsW TCGACATCTCT Feces
## M11FcsW CGACTGCAAGCT Feces
## ...       ...      ...
## TS28     GCATCGTCTGG Feces
## TS29     CTAGTCGCTGG Feces
## Even1    TGACTCTGCGG Mock
## Even2    TCTGATCGAGG Mock
## Even3    AGAGAGACAGG Mock
##          Description      sum detected
##          <factor> <numeric> <numeric>

```

```

## CL3      Calhoun South Carolina Pine soil, pH 4.9      864077    6964
## CC1      Cedar Creek Minnesota, grassland, pH 6.1     1135457    7679
## SV1      Sevilleta new Mexico, desert scrub, pH 8.3     697509    5729
## M31FcsW M3, Day 1, fecal swab, whole body study     1543451    2667
## M11FcsW M1, Day 1, fecal swab, whole body study     2076476    2574
## ...
## ...          ...          ...
## TS28           Twin #1     937466    2679
## TS29           Twin #2     1211071    2629
## Even1          Even1     1216137    4213
## Even2          Even2     971073     3130
## Even3          Even3     1078241    2776
##           total
##           <numeric>
## CL3      864077
## CC1      1135457
## SV1      697509
## M31FcsW 1543451
## M11FcsW 2076476
## ...
## ...          ...
## TS28      937466
## TS29      1211071
## Even1     1216137
## Even2     971073
## Even3     1078241

```

The distribution of calculated library sizes can be visualized as a histogram (left), or by sorting the samples by library size (right).

```

library(ggplot2)

p1 <- ggplot(as.data.frame(colData(tse))) +
  geom_histogram(aes(x = sum), color = "black", fill =
    "gray", bins = 30) +
  labs(x = "Library size", y = "Frequency (n)") +
  # scale_x_log10(breaks = scales::trans_breaks("log10",
  #   function(x) 10^x),
  #   labels = scales::trans_format("log10",
  #     scales::math_format(10^.x))) +
  theme_bw() +
  theme(panel.grid.major = element_blank(), # Removes the
    grid
    panel.grid.minor = element_blank(),
    panel.border = element_blank(),
    panel.background = element_blank(),
    axis.line = element_line(colour = "black")) # Adds
    y-axis

```

```

library(dplyr)
df <- as.data.frame(colData(tse)) %>%
  arrange(sum) %>%
  mutate(index = 1:n())
p2 <- ggplot(df, aes(y = index, x = sum/1e6)) +
  geom_point() +
  labs(x = "Library size (million reads)", y = "Sample
    ↵ index") +
  theme_bw() +
  theme(panel.grid.major = element_blank(), # Removes the
    ↵ grid
    panel.grid.minor = element_blank(),
    panel.border = element_blank(),
    panel.background = element_blank(),
    axis.line = element_line(colour = "black")) # Adds
    ↵ y-axis

library(patchwork)
p1 + p2

```

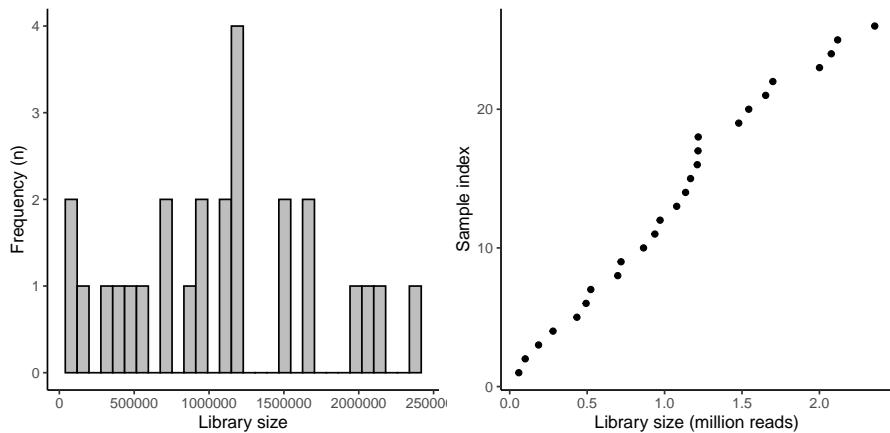


Figure 5.3: Library size distribution.

Library sizes - and other variables from `colData` - can be also visualized by using specified function called `plotColData`.

```

library(ggplot2)
# Sort samples by read count, order the factor levels, and store
  ↵ back to tse as DataFrame

```

```
# TODO: plotColData could include an option for sorting samples
#       based on colData variables
colData(tse) <- as.data.frame(colData(tse)) %>%
  arrange(X.SampleID) %>%
  mutate(X.SampleID = factor(X.SampleID,
    levels=X.SampleID)) %>%
  DataFrame
plotColData(tse, "sum", "X.SampleID", colour_by = "SampleType") +
  theme(axis.text.x = element_text(angle = 45, hjust=1)) +
  labs(y = "Library size (N)", x = "Sample ID")
```

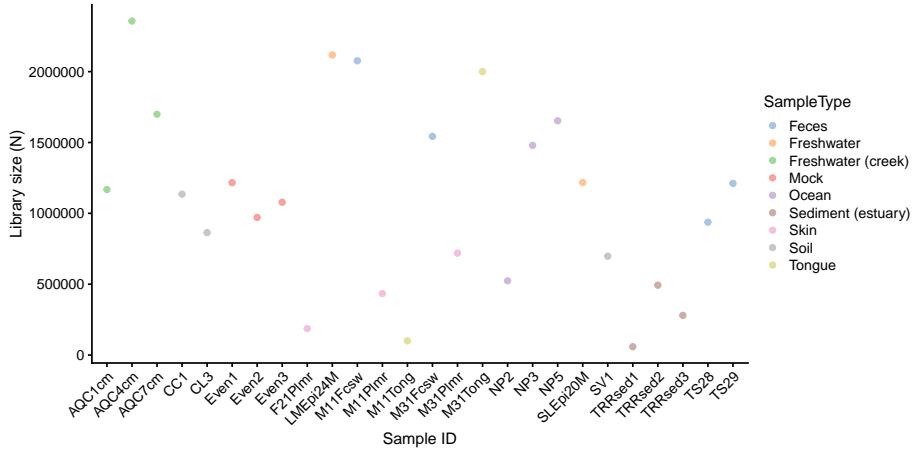


Figure 5.4: Library sizes per sample.

```
plotColData(tse, "sum", "SampleType", colour_by = "SampleType") +
  theme(axis.text.x = element_text(angle = 45, hjust=1))
```

In addition, data can be rarefied with subsampleCounts, which normalises the samples to an equal number of reads. However, this practice has been discouraged for the analysis of differentially abundant microorganisms (see (McMurdie and Holmes, 2014)).

### 5.3.3 Contaminant sequences

Samples might be contaminated with exogenous sequences. The impact of each contaminant can be estimated based on their frequencies and concentrations across the samples.



Figure 5.5: Library sizes per sample type.

The following decontam functions are based on the (Davis et al., 2018) and support such functionality:

- `isContaminant`, `isNotContaminant`
- `addContaminantQC`, `addNotContaminantQC`

## Session Info

View session info

```
R version 4.2.1 (2022-06-23)
Platform: x86_64-pc-linux-gnu (64-bit)
Running under: Ubuntu 20.04.4 LTS

Matrix products: default
BLAS:    /usr/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/openblas-pthread/libblas.so.3
LAPACK:  /usr/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/openblas-pthread/liblapack.so.3

locale:
[1] LC_CTYPE=en_US.UTF-8          LC_NUMERIC=C
[3] LC_TIME=en_US.UTF-8          LC_COLLATE=en_US.UTF-8
[5] LC_MONETARY=en_US.UTF-8       LC_MESSAGES=en_US.UTF-8
[7] LC_PAPER=en_US.UTF-8         LC_NAME=C
[9] LC_ADDRESS=C                 LC_TELEPHONE=C
[11] LC_MEASUREMENT=en_US.UTF-8   LC_IDENTIFICATION=C
```

```

attached base packages:
[1] stats4      stats       graphics   grDevices  utils      datasets   methods
[8] base

other attached packages:
[1] patchwork_1.1.2           dplyr_1.0.10
[3] scater_1.24.0            scuttle_1.6.3
[5] miaViz_1.5.1             ggraph_2.0.6
[7] ggplot2_3.3.6            miaTime_0.1.15
[9] mia_1.5.16               MultiAssayExperiment_1.22.0
[11] TreeSummarizedExperiment_2.1.4 Biostrings_2.64.1
[13] XVector_0.36.0           SingleCellExperiment_1.18.1
[15] SummarizedExperiment_1.26.1 Biobase_2.56.0
[17] GenomicRanges_1.48.0     GenomeInfoDb_1.32.4
[19] IRanges_2.30.1           S4Vectors_0.34.0
[21] BiocGenerics_0.42.0     MatrixGenerics_1.8.1
[23] matrixStats_0.62.0-9003 BiocStyle_2.24.0
[25] rebook_1.6.0

loaded via a namespace (and not attached):
[1] utf8_1.2.2                 tidyselect_1.1.2
[3] RSQLite_2.2.18              AnnotationDbi_1.58.0
[5] grid_4.2.1                 TSP_1.2-1
[7] BiocParallel_1.30.3         Rsne_0.16
[9] munsell_0.5.0              ScaledMatrix_1.4.1
[11] codetools_0.2-18           withr_2.5.0
[13] colorspace_2.0-3           filelock_1.0.2
[15] highr_0.9                  knitr_1.40
[17] labeling_0.4.2             GenomeInfoDbData_1.2.8
[19] polyclip_1.10-0            bit64_4.0.5
[21] farver_2.1.1               vctrs_0.4.2
[23] treeio_1.20.2              generics_0.1.3
[25] xfun_0.33                 R6_2.5.1
[27] doParallel_1.0.17           ggbeeswarm_0.6.0
[29] clue_0.3-61                graphlayouts_0.8.2
[31] rsvd_1.0.5                 seriation_1.3.6
[33] locfit_1.5-9.6             bitops_1.0-7
[35] cachem_1.0.6              gridGraphics_0.5-1
[37] DelayedArray_0.22.0        assertthat_0.2.1
[39] scales_1.2.1               STools_1.10.0
[41] beeswarm_0.4.0              gtable_0.3.1
[43] beachmat_2.12.0             sva_3.44.0
[45] tidygraph_1.2.2             rlang_1.0.6
[47] genefilter_1.78.0           GlobalOptions_0.1.2
[49] splines_4.2.1              lazyeval_0.2.2
[51] BiocManager_1.30.18         yaml_2.3.5

```

```
[53] reshape2_1.4.4          tools_4.2.1
[55] bookdown_0.29          ggplotify_0.1.0
[57] ellipsis_0.3.2         decontam_1.16.0
[59] RColorBrewer_1.1-3     Rcpp_1.0.9
[61] plyr_1.8.7              sparseMatrixStats_1.8.0
[63] zlibbioc_1.42.0         purrr_0.3.4
[65] RCurl_1.98-1.9          GetoptLong_1.0.5
[67] viridis_0.6.2            cowplot_1.1.1
[69] ggrepel_0.9.1           cluster_2.1.4
[71] DECIPHER_2.24.0          magrittr_2.0.3
[73] data.table_1.14.2        openxlsx_4.2.5
[75] circlize_0.4.15          ggnewscale_0.4.7
[77] randomcoloR_1.1.0.1      evaluate_0.16
[79] xtable_1.8-4             XML_3.99-0.11
[81] gridExtra_2.3             shape_1.4.6
[83] compiler_4.2.1            tibble_3.1.8
[85] V8_4.2.1                 crayon_1.5.2
[87] htmltools_0.5.3           gggfun_0.0.7
[89] mgcv_1.8-40               tidyR_1.2.1
[91] geneplotter_1.74.0         aplot_0.1.7
[93] DBI_1.1.3                 tweenr_2.0.2
[95] ComplexHeatmap_2.12.1      MASS_7.3-58.1
[97] Matrix_1.5-1              permute_0.9-7
[99] cli_3.4.1                 parallel_4.2.1
[101] igraph_1.3.5             pkgconfig_2.0.3
[103] dir.expiry_1.4.0          registry_0.5-1
[105] foreach_1.5.2             ggtree_3.4.4
[107] annotate_1.74.0            viper_0.4.5
[109] DirichletMultinomial_1.38.0 yulab.utils_0.0.5
[111] stringr_1.4.1             digest_0.6.29
[113] vegan_2.6-2               graph_1.74.0
[115] rmarkdown_2.16             tidytree_0.4.1
[117] edgeR_3.38.4              DelayedMatrixStats_1.18.1
[119] curl_4.3.2                rjson_0.2.21
[121] lifecycle_1.0.2            nlme_3.1-159
[123] jsonlite_1.8.2            BiocNeighbors_1.14.0
[125] CodeDepends_0.6.5          viridisLite_0.4.1
[127] limma_3.52.4              fansi_1.0.3
[129] pillar_1.8.1              lattice_0.20-45
[131] KEGGREST_1.36.3            fastmap_1.1.0
[133] httr_1.4.4                survival_3.4-0
[135] glue_1.6.2                 zip_2.2.1
[137] sechm_1.4.1               png_0.1-7
[139] iterators_1.0.14            bit_4.0.4
[141] ggforce_0.4.1              stringi_1.7.8
[143] blob_1.2.3                DESeq2_1.36.0
```

```
[145] BiocSingular_1.12.0      memoise_2.0.1
[147] irlba_2.3.5.1           ape_5.6-2
```



# Chapter 6

## Taxonomic Information

```
library(mia)
data("GlobalPatterns", package="mia")
tse <- GlobalPatterns
```

Taxonomic information is a key part of analyzing microbiome data and without it, any type of data analysis probably will not make much sense. However, the degree of detail of taxonomic information differs depending on the dataset and annotation data used.

Therefore, the mia package expects a loose assembly of taxonomic information and assumes certain key aspects:

- Taxonomic information is given as character vectors or factors in the `rowData` of a `SummarizedExperiment` object.
- The columns containing the taxonomic information must be named `domain`, `kingdom`, `phylum`, `class`, `order`, `family`, `genus`, `species` or with a capital first letter.
- the columns must be given in the order shown above
- column can be omitted, but the order must remain

### 6.1 Assigning taxonomic information.

There are a number of methods to assign taxonomic information. We like to give a short introduction about the methods available without ranking one over the other. This has to be your choice based on the result for the individual dataset.

### 6.1.1 dada2

The dada2 package (Callahan et al., 2020) implements the `assignTaxonomy` function, which takes as input the ASV sequences associated with each row of data and a training dataset. For more information visit the dada2 homepage.

### 6.1.2 DECIPHER

The DECIPHER package (Wright, 2020) implements the `IDTAXA` algorithm to assign either taxonomic information or function information. For `mia` only the first option is of interest for now and more information can be found on the DECIPHER website.

## 6.2 Functions to access taxonomic information

`checkTaxonomy` checks whether the taxonomic information is usable for `mia`

```
checkTaxonomy(tse)
```

```
## [1] TRUE
```

Since the `rowData` can contain other data, `taxonomyRanks` will return the columns `mia` assumes to contain the taxonomic information.

```
taxonomyRanks(tse)
```

```
## [1] "Kingdom" "Phylum"  "Class"    "Order"    "Family"   "Genus"    "Species"
```

This can then be used to subset the `rowData` to columns needed.

```
rowData(tse)[, taxonomyRanks(tse)]
```

```
## DataFrame with 19216 rows and 7 columns
##           Kingdom      Phylum      Class      Order      Family
##           <character> <character> <character> <character> <character>
## 549322     Archaea Crenarchaeota Thermoprotei          NA        NA
## 522457     Archaea Crenarchaeota Thermoprotei          NA        NA
## 951       Archaea Crenarchaeota Thermoprotei Sulfolobales Sulfolobaceae
## 244423     Archaea Crenarchaeota          Sd-NA        NA        NA
## 586076     Archaea Crenarchaeota          Sd-NA        NA        NA
```

```

## ...      ...
## 278222  Bacteria      SR1      NA      NA      NA
## 463590  Bacteria      SR1      NA      NA      NA
## 535321  Bacteria      SR1      NA      NA      NA
## 200359  Bacteria      SR1      NA      NA      NA
## 271582  Bacteria      SR1      NA      NA      NA
##           Genus          Species
##           <character>      <character>
## 549322    NA            NA
## 522457    NA            NA
## 951       Sulfolobus   Sulfolobusacidocalda..
## 244423    NA            NA
## 586076    NA            NA
## ...      ...
## 278222    NA            NA
## 463590    NA            NA
## 535321    NA            NA
## 200359    NA            NA
## 271582    NA            NA

```

`taxonomyRankEmpty` checks for empty values in the given `rank` and returns a logical vector of `length(x)`.

```
all(!taxonomyRankEmpty(tse, rank = "Kingdom"))
```

```
## [1] TRUE
```

```
table(taxonomyRankEmpty(tse, rank = "Genus"))
```

```

##
## FALSE  TRUE
## 8008 11208

```

```
table(taxonomyRankEmpty(tse, rank = "Species"))
```

```

##
## FALSE  TRUE
## 1413 17803

```

`getTaxonomyLabels` is a multi-purpose function, which turns taxonomic information into a character vector of `length(x)`

```
head(getTaxonomyLabels(tse))

## [1] "Class:Thermoprotei"           "Class:Thermoprotei_1"
## [3] "Species:Sulfolobusacidocaldarius" "Class:Sd-NA"
## [5] "Class:Sd-NA_1"                 "Class:Sd-NA_2"
```

By default, this will use the lowest non-empty information to construct a string with the following scheme `level:value`. If all levels are the same, this part is omitted, but can be added by setting `with_rank = TRUE`.

```
phylum <- !is.na(rowData(tse)$Phylum) &
  ↵ vapply(data.frame(apply(rowData(tse)[, taxonomyRanks(tse)[3:7]], 1L, is.na)), all,
head(getTaxonomyLabels(tse[phylum,])))

## [1] "Crenarchaeota"    "Crenarchaeota_1"   "Crenarchaeota_2"   "Actinobacteria"
## [5] "Actinobacteria_1" "Spirochaetes"

head(getTaxonomyLabels(tse[phylum,], with_rank = TRUE))

## [1] "Phylum:Crenarchaeota"    "Phylum:Crenarchaeota_1"
## [3] "Phylum:Crenarchaeota_2"   "Phylum:Actinobacteria"
## [5] "Phylum:Actinobacteria_1" "Phylum:Spirochaetes"
```

By default the return value of `getTaxonomyLabels` contains only unique elements by passing it through `make.unique`. This step can be omitted by setting `make_unique = FALSE`.

```
head(getTaxonomyLabels(tse[phylum,], with_rank = TRUE,
  ↵ make_unique = FALSE))
```

```
## [1] "Phylum:Crenarchaeota"    "Phylum:Crenarchaeota"   "Phylum:Crenarchaeota"
## [4] "Phylum:Actinobacteria"   "Phylum:Actinobacteria"   "Phylum:Spirochaetes"
```

To apply the loop resolving function `resolveLoop` from the `TreeSummarizedExperiment` package (Huang, 2020) within `getTaxonomyLabels`, set `resolve_loops = TRUE`.

The function `getUniqueTaxa` gives a list of unique taxa for the specified taxonomic rank.

```
head(getUniqueTaxa(tse, rank = "Phylum"))

## [1] "Crenarchaeota"  "Euryarchaeota"  "Actinobacteria" "Spirochaetes"
## [5] "MVP-15"        "Proteobacteria"
```

### 6.2.1 Generate a taxonomic tree on the fly

To create a taxonomic tree, `taxonomyTree` used the information and returns a `phylo` object. Duplicate information from the `rowData` is removed.

```
taxonomyTree(tse)

## 
## Phylogenetic tree with 1645 tips and 1089 internal nodes.
##
## Tip labels:
##   Species:Cenarchaeumsymbiosum, Species:pIVWA5, Species:CandidatusNitrososphaeragargensis, Spe
## Node labels:
##   root:ALL, Kingdom:Archaea, Phylum:Crenarchaeota, Class:C2, Class:Sd-NA, Class:Thaumarchaeota
##
## Rooted; includes branch lengths.

tse <- addTaxonomyTree(tse)
tse

## class: TreeSummarizedExperiment
## dim: 19216 26
## metadata(0):
## assays(1): counts
## rownames(19216): Class:Thermoprotei Class:Thermoprotei ... Phylum:SR1
##   Phylum:SR1
## rowData names(7): Kingdom Phylum ... Genus Species
## colnames(26): CL3 CC1 ... Even2 Even3
## colData names(7): X.SampleID Primer ... SampleType Description
## reducedDimNames(0):
## mainExpName: NULL
## altExpNames(0):
## rowLinks: a LinkDataFrame (19216 rows)
## rowTree: 1 phylo tree(s) (1645 leaves)
## colLinks: NULL
## colTree: NULL
```

The implementation is based on the `toTree` function from the `TreeSummarizedExperiment` package (Huang, 2020).

### 6.3 Data agglomeration

One of the main applications of taxonomic information in regards to count data is to agglomerate count data on taxonomic levels and track the influence of changing conditions through these levels. For this `mia` contains the `agglomerateByRank` function. The ideal location to store the agglomerated data is as an alternative experiment.

```
tse <- relAbundanceCounts(tse)
altExp(tse, "Family") <- agglomerateByRank(tse, rank = "Family",
                                              agglomerateTree =
                                              TRUE)
altExp(tse, "Family")

## class: TreeSummarizedExperiment
## dim: 603 26
## metadata(1): agglomerated_by_rank
## assays(2): counts relabundance
## rownames(603): Class:Thermoprotei Family:Sulfolobaceae ...
##   Family:Thermodesulfobiaceae Phylum:SR1
## rowData names(7): Kingdom Phylum ... Genus Species
## colnames(26): CL3 CC1 ... Even2 Even3
## colData names(7): X.SampleID Primer ... SampleType Description
## reducedDimNames(0):
## mainExpName: NULL
## altExpNames(0):
## rowLinks: a LinkDataFrame (603 rows)
## rowTree: 1 phylo tree(s) (496 leaves)
## colLinks: NULL
## colTree: NULL
```

If multiple assays (counts and relabundance) exist, both will be agglomerated.

```
assayNames(tse)

## [1] "counts"      "relabundance"

assayNames(altExp(tse, "Family"))

## [1] "counts"      "relabundance"
```

```

assay(altExp(tse, "Family"), "relabundance")[1:5,1:7]

##          CL3      CC1  SV1 M31FcsW M11FcsW M31Plmr M11Plmr
## Class:Thermoprotei 0.0000000 0.000e+00 0 0 0 0 0.000e+00
## Family:Sulfolobaceae 0.0000000 0.000e+00 0 0 0 0 2.305e-06
## Class:Sd-NA 0.0000000 0.000e+00 0 0 0 0 0.000e+00
## Order:NRP-J 0.0001991 2.070e-04 0 0 0 0 6.914e-06
## Family:SAGMA-X 0.0000000 6.165e-06 0 0 0 0 0.000e+00

assay(altExp(tse, "Family"), "counts")[1:5,1:7]

##          CL3 CC1  SV1 M31FcsW M11FcsW M31Plmr M11Plmr
## Class:Thermoprotei 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
## Family:Sulfolobaceae 0 0 0 0 0 0 1
## Class:Sd-NA 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
## Order:NRP-J 172 235 0 0 0 0 3
## Family:SAGMA-X 0 7 0 0 0 0 0

```

`altExpNames` now consists of `Family` level data. This can be extended to use any level present in Kingdom, Phylum, Class, Order, Family, Genus, Species.

## 6.4 Data transformation

Data transformation is a very common procedure in microbiome analysis. In transformation, each data point is replaced with transformed value that is calculated by applying transformation formula to the data point. Transformation can be used, for example, to normalize skewed data, or to reduce weight of bigger values compared to smaller values.

In `mia` package, transformations are applied to abundance data. The transformed abundance table is stored back to ‘assays’. `mia` includes transformation functions for sample-wise or column-wise transformation (`‘transformSamples()’`), and for feature-wise or row-wise transformation (`‘transformFeatures()’`).

For complete list of available transformations and parameters, see function help.

```

tse <- transformSamples(tse, method = "relabundance")
tse <- transformSamples(x = tse, assay_name = "relabundance",
  ↵ method = "clr",
    ↵ pseudocount = 1, name =
    ↵ "clr_transformation")

head(assay(tse, "clr_transformation"))

```

```

##                                     CL3      CC1      SV1      M31Fcsw
## Class:Thermoprotei      -5.19e-05 -5.192e-05 -5.194e-05 -5.035e-05
## Class:Thermoprotei      -5.19e-05 -5.192e-05 -5.194e-05 -5.035e-05
## Species:Sulfolobusacidocaldarius -5.19e-05 -5.192e-05 -5.194e-05 -5.035e-05
## Class:Sd-NA             -5.19e-05 -5.192e-05 -5.194e-05 -5.035e-05
## Class:Sd-NA             -5.19e-05 -5.192e-05 -5.194e-05 -5.035e-05
## Class:Sd-NA             -5.19e-05 -5.192e-05 -5.194e-05 -5.035e-05
##                                     M11Fcsw   M31Plmr   M11Plmr   F21Plmr
## Class:Thermoprotei      -4.991e-05 -5.06e-05 -5.091e-05 -5.148e-05
## Class:Thermoprotei      -4.991e-05 -5.06e-05 -5.091e-05 -5.148e-05
## Species:Sulfolobusacidocaldarius -4.991e-05 -5.06e-05 -4.860e-05 -5.148e-05
## Class:Sd-NA             -4.991e-05 -5.06e-05 -5.091e-05 -5.148e-05
## Class:Sd-NA             -4.991e-05 -5.06e-05 -5.091e-05 -5.148e-05
## Class:Sd-NA             -4.991e-05 -5.06e-05 -5.091e-05 -5.148e-05
##                                     M31Tong   M11Tong   LMEpi24M   SLEpi20M
## Class:Thermoprotei      -4.89e-05 -5.05e-05 -4.796e-05 -4.910e-05
## Class:Thermoprotei      -4.89e-05 -5.05e-05 -4.796e-05 -4.993e-05
## Species:Sulfolobusacidocaldarius -4.89e-05 -5.05e-05 -4.796e-05 -4.993e-05
## Class:Sd-NA             -4.89e-05 -5.05e-05 -4.796e-05 -4.993e-05
## Class:Sd-NA             -4.89e-05 -5.05e-05 -4.796e-05 -4.993e-05
## Class:Sd-NA             -4.89e-05 -5.05e-05 -4.796e-05 -4.993e-05
##                                     AQC1cm   AQC4cm   AQC7cm   NP2
## Class:Thermoprotei      -2.419e-05 -4.442e-06  2.822e-05 -4.900e-05
## Class:Thermoprotei      -4.731e-05 -4.602e-05 -4.475e-05 -5.091e-05
## Species:Sulfolobusacidocaldarius -4.731e-05 -4.686e-05 -4.828e-05 -5.091e-05
## Class:Sd-NA             -4.731e-05 -3.753e-05 -3.121e-05 -5.091e-05
## Class:Sd-NA             -4.731e-05 -4.602e-05 -4.769e-05 -5.091e-05
## Class:Sd-NA             -4.731e-05 -4.644e-05 -4.651e-05 -5.091e-05
##                                     NP3      NP5      TRRsed1  TRRsed2
## Class:Thermoprotei      -5.133e-05 -5.141e-05 -5.185e-05 -5.116e-05
## Class:Thermoprotei      -5.133e-05 -5.141e-05 -5.185e-05 -5.116e-05
## Species:Sulfolobusacidocaldarius -5.133e-05 -5.141e-05 -5.185e-05 -5.116e-05
## Class:Sd-NA             -5.133e-05 -5.141e-05 -5.185e-05 -5.116e-05
## Class:Sd-NA             -5.133e-05 -5.141e-05 -5.185e-05 -5.116e-05
## Class:Sd-NA             -5.133e-05 -5.141e-05 -5.185e-05 -5.116e-05
##                                     TRRsed3  TS28     TS29     Even1
## Class:Thermoprotei      -5.158e-05 -5.117e-05 -5.01e-05 -5.125e-05
## Class:Thermoprotei      -5.158e-05 -5.117e-05 -5.01e-05 -5.125e-05
## Species:Sulfolobusacidocaldarius -5.158e-05 -5.117e-05 -5.01e-05 -5.125e-05
## Class:Sd-NA             -5.158e-05 -5.117e-05 -5.01e-05 -5.125e-05
## Class:Sd-NA             -5.158e-05 -5.117e-05 -5.01e-05 -5.125e-05
## Class:Sd-NA             -5.158e-05 -5.117e-05 -5.01e-05 -5.125e-05
##                                     Even2     Even3
## Class:Thermoprotei      -5.114e-05 -5.122e-05
## Class:Thermoprotei      -5.114e-05 -5.122e-05
## Species:Sulfolobusacidocaldarius -5.114e-05 -5.122e-05

```

```
## Class:Sd-NA          -5.114e-05 -5.122e-05
## Class:Sd-NA          -5.114e-05 -5.122e-05
## Class:Sd-NA          -5.114e-05 -5.122e-05
```

- In ‘pa’ transformation, ‘threshold’ specifies the value that divides observations to be absent or present. By default, it is 0.

```
tse <- transformFeatures(tse, method = "pa", threshold = 10)
```

```
head(assay(tse, "pa"))
```

	CL3	CC1	SV1	M31Fcsw	M11Fcsw	M31Plmr	M11Plmr
## Class:Thermoprotei	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
## Class:Thermoprotei	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
## Species:Sulfolobusacidocaldarius	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
## Class:Sd-NA	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
## Class:Sd-NA	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
## Class:Sd-NA	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	F21Plmr	M31Tong	M11Tong	LMEpi24M	SLEpi20M		
## Class:Thermoprotei	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
## Class:Thermoprotei	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
## Species:Sulfolobusacidocaldarius	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
## Class:Sd-NA	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
## Class:Sd-NA	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
## Class:Sd-NA	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	AQC1cm	AQC4cm	AQC7cm	NP2	NP3	NP5	TRRsed1
## Class:Thermoprotei	1	1	1	0	0	0	0
## Class:Thermoprotei	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
## Species:Sulfolobusacidocaldarius	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
## Class:Sd-NA	0	1	1	0	0	0	0
## Class:Sd-NA	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
## Class:Sd-NA	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	TRRsed2	TRRsed3	TS28	TS29	Even1	Even2	Even3
## Class:Thermoprotei	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
## Class:Thermoprotei	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
## Species:Sulfolobusacidocaldarius	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
## Class:Sd-NA	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
## Class:Sd-NA	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
## Class:Sd-NA	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

```
# list of abundance tables that assays slot contains
assays(tse)
```

```
## List of length 4
## names(4): counts relabundance clr_transformation pa
```

## 6.5 Pick specific

Retrieving of specific elements that are required for specific analysis. For instance, extracting abundances for a specific taxa in all samples or all taxa in one sample.

### 6.5.1 Abundances of all taxa in specific sample

```
taxa.abund.cc1 <- getAbundanceSample(tse,
                                         sample_id = "CC1",
                                         assay_name = "counts")
taxa.abund.cc1[1:10]
```

##	Class:Thermoprotei	Class:Thermoprotei
##	0	0
## Species:Sulfolobusacidocaldarius		Class:Sd-NA
##	0	0
##	Class:Sd-NA	Class:Sd-NA
##	0	0
##	Order:NRP-J	Order:NRP-J
##	1	0
##	Order:NRP-J	Order:NRP-J
##	194	5

### 6.5.2 Abundances of specific taxa in all samples

```
taxa.abundances <- getAbundanceFeature(tse,
                                         feature_id =
                                         "Phylum:Bacteroidetes",
                                         assay_name = "counts")
taxa.abundances[1:10]
```

## CL3	CC1	SV1	M31FcsW	M11FcsW	M31Plmr	M11Plmr	F21Plmr	M31Tong	M11Tong	
## 2	18	2	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0

## Session Info

View session info

```
R version 4.2.1 (2022-06-23)
Platform: x86_64-pc-linux-gnu (64-bit)
Running under: Ubuntu 20.04.4 LTS

Matrix products: default
BLAS:    /usr/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/openblas-pthread/libblas.so.3
LAPACK:  /usr/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/openblas-pthread/liblapack.so.3

locale:
[1] LC_CTYPE=en_US.UTF-8          LC_NUMERIC=C
[3] LC_TIME=en_US.UTF-8          LC_COLLATE=en_US.UTF-8
[5] LC_MONETARY=en_US.UTF-8       LC_MESSAGES=en_US.UTF-8
[7] LC_PAPER=en_US.UTF-8         LC_NAME=C
[9] LC_ADDRESS=C                 LC_TELEPHONE=C
[11] LC_MEASUREMENT=en_US.UTF-8   LC_IDENTIFICATION=C

attached base packages:
[1] stats4      stats       graphics   grDevices  utils      datasets   methods
[8] base

other attached packages:
[1] mia_1.5.16              MultiAssayExperiment_1.22.0
[3] TreeSummarizedExperiment_2.1.4 Biostings_2.64.1
[5] XVector_0.36.0           SingleCellExperiment_1.18.1
[7] SummarizedExperiment_1.26.1 Biobase_2.56.0
[9] GenomicRanges_1.48.0      GenomeInfoDb_1.32.4
[11] IRanges_2.30.1           S4Vectors_0.34.0
[13] BiocGenerics_0.42.0       MatrixGenerics_1.8.1
[15] matrixStats_0.62.0-9003   BiocStyle_2.24.0
[17] rebook_1.6.0

loaded via a namespace (and not attached):
[1] ggbeeswarm_0.6.0          colorspace_2.0-3
[3] scuttle_1.6.3              BiocNeighbors_1.14.0
[5] ggrepel_0.9.1              bit64_4.0.5
[7] fansi_1.0.3                decontam_1.16.0
[9] codetools_0.2-18           splines_4.2.1
[11] sparseMatrixStats_1.8.0    cachem_1.0.6
[13] knitr_1.40                 scater_1.24.0
[15] jsonlite_1.8.2             cluster_2.1.4
[17] graph_1.74.0               BiocManager_1.30.18
[19] compiler_4.2.1              assertthat_0.2.1
[21] Matrix_1.5-1               fastmap_1.1.0
[23] lazyeval_0.2.2              cli_3.4.1
[25] BiocSingular_1.12.0        htmltools_0.5.3
[27] tools_4.2.1                rsrvd_1.0.5
```

```
[29] gtable_0.3.1                  glue_1.6.2
[31] GenomeInfoDbData_1.2.8       reshape2_1.4.4
[33] dplyr_1.0.10                 Rcpp_1.0.9
[35] vctrs_0.4.2                  ape_5.6-2
[37] nlme_3.1-159                 DECIPHER_2.24.0
[39] DelayedMatrixStats_1.18.1    xfun_0.33
[41] stringr_1.4.1                 beachmat_2.12.0
[43] lifecycle_1.0.2               irlba_2.3.5.1
[45] XML_3.99-0.11                zlibbioc_1.42.0
[47] MASS_7.3-58.1                 scales_1.2.1
[49] parallel_4.2.1               yaml_2.3.5
[51] memoise_2.0.1                 gridExtra_2.3
[53] ggplot2_3.3.6                 yulab.utils_0.0.5
[55] stringi_1.7.8                 RSQLite_2.2.18
[57] ScaledMatrix_1.4.1            tidytree_0.4.1
[59] permute_0.9-7                 filelock_1.0.2
[61] BiocParallel_1.30.3           rlang_1.0.6
[63] pkgconfig_2.0.3               bitops_1.0-7
[65] evaluate_0.16                 lattice_0.20-45
[67] purrr_0.3.4                  treeio_1.20.2
[69] CodeDepends_0.6.5             bit_4.0.4
[71] tidyselect_1.1.2              plyr_1.8.7
[73] magrittr_2.0.3                bookdown_0.29
[75] R6_2.5.1                     generics_0.1.3
[77] DelayedArray_0.22.0            DBI_1.1.3
[79] pillar_1.8.1                  mgcv_1.8-40
[81] RCurl_1.98-1.9                 tibble_3.1.8
[83] dir.expiry_1.4.0              crayon_1.5.2
[85] utf8_1.2.2                   rmarkdown_2.16
[87] viridis_0.6.2                 grid_4.2.1
[89] blob_1.2.3                   vegan_2.6-2
[91] digest_0.6.29                tidyrr_1.2.1
[93] munsell_0.5.0                 DirichletMultinomial_1.38.0
[95] beeswarm_0.4.0                viridisLite_0.4.1
[97] vipor_0.4.5
```

# Chapter 7

## Community diversity

Diversity estimates are a central topic in microbiome data analysis.

There are three commonly employed levels of diversity measurements, which are trying to put a number on different aspects of the questions associated with diversity (Whittaker, 1960).

Many different ways for estimating such diversity measurements have been described in the literature. Which measurement is best or applicable for your samples, is not the aim of the following sections.

```
library(mia)
data("GlobalPatterns", package="mia")
tse <- GlobalPatterns
```

**Alpha diversity**, also sometimes interchangeably used with the term *species diversity*, summarizes the distribution of species abundances in a given sample into a single number that depends on species richness and evenness. Diversity indices measure the overall community heterogeneity. A number of ecological diversity measures are available. The Hill coefficient combines many standard indices into a single equation that provides observed richness, inverse Simpson, and Shannon diversity, and generalized diversity as special cases. In general, diversity increases together with increasing richness and evenness. Sometimes richness, phylogenetic diversity, evenness, dominance, and rarity are considered to be variants of alpha diversity.

**Richness** refers to the total number of species in a community (sample). The simplest richness index is the number of observed species (observed richness). Assuming limited sampling from the community, however, this may underestimate the true species richness. Several estimators are available, including for instance ACE (A and SM, 1992) and Chao1 (A, 1984). Richness estimates are unaffected by species abundances.

**Phylogenetic diversity** was first proposed by (Faith, 1992). Unlike the diversity measures mentioned above, Phylogenetic diversity (PD) measure incorporates information from phylogenetic relationships stored in `phylo` tree between species in a community (sample). The Faith's PD is calculated as the sum of branch length of all species in a community (sample).

**Evenness** focuses on species abundances, and can thus complement the number of species. A typical evenness index is the Pielou's evenness, which is Shannon diversity normalized by the observed richness.

**Dominance** indices are in general negatively correlated with diversity, and sometimes used in ecological literature. High dominance is obtained when one or few species have a high share of the total species abundance in the community.

**Rarity** indices characterize the concentration of taxa at low abundance. Prevalence and detection thresholds determine rare taxa whose total concentration is represented as a rarity index.

## 7.1 Estimation

Alpha diversity can be estimated with wrapper functions that interact with other packages implementing the calculation, such as `vegan` (Oksanen et al., 2020).

### 7.1.1 Richness

Richness gives the number of features present within a community and can be calculated with `estimateRichness`. Each of the estimate diversity/richness/evenness/dominance functions adds the calculated measure(s) to the `colData` of the `SummarizedExperiment` under the given column `name`. Here, we calculate `observed` features as a measure of richness.

```
tse <- mia::estimateRichness(tse,
                             assay_name = "counts",
                             index = "observed",
                             name="observed")

head(colData(tse)$observed)

##      CL3      CC1      SV1 M31Fcsw M11Fcsw M31Plmr
##    6964    7679    5729    2667    2574    3214
```

This allows access to the values to be analyzed directly from the `colData`, for example by plotting them using `plotColData` from the `scater` package (McCarthy et al., 2020).

```
library(scater)
plotColData(tse,
            "observed",
            "SampleType",
            colour_by = "Final_Barcodes") +
  theme(axis.text.x = element_text(angle=45,hjust=1)) +
  ylab(expression(Richness[Observed]))
```

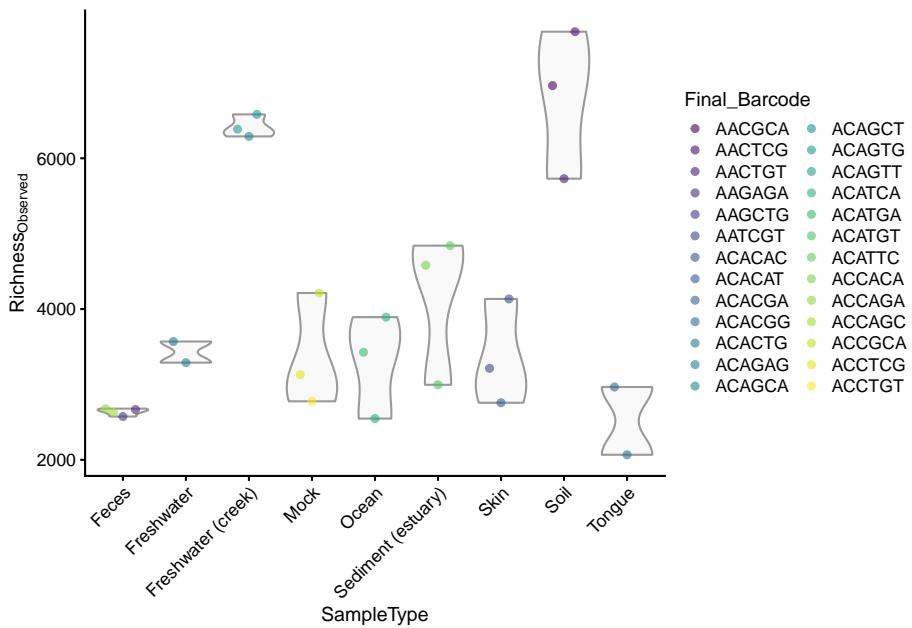


Figure 7.1: Shannon diversity estimates plotted grouped by sample type with colour-labeled barcode.

### 7.1.2 Diversity

The main function, `estimateDiversity`, calculates the selected diversity index based on the selected assay data.

```
tse <- mia::estimateDiversity(tse,
                                assay_name = "counts",
                                index = "shannon",
                                name = "shannon")
head(colData(tse)$shannon)
```

```
##      CL3      CC1      SV1 M31FcsW M11FcsW M31Plmr
##    6.577    6.777    6.498    3.828    3.288    4.289
```

Alpha diversities can be visualized with boxplot. Here, Shannon index is compared between different sample type groups. Individual data points are visualized by plotting them as points with `geom_jitter`.

`geom_signif` is used to test whether these differences are statistically significant. It adds p-values to plot.

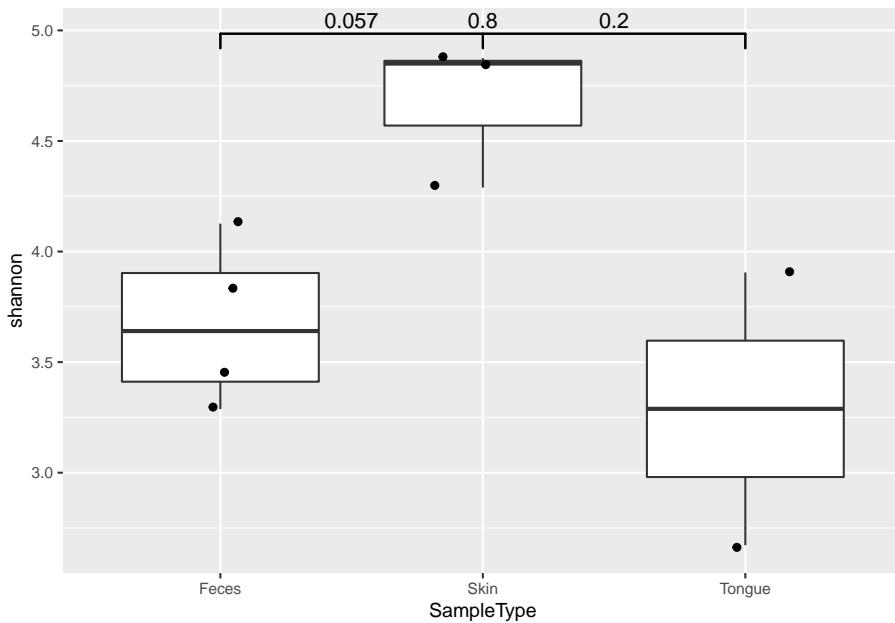
```
if( !require(ggsignif) ){
  install.packages(ggsignif)
}
library(ggplot2)
library(patchwork)
library(ggsignif)

# Subsets the data. Takes only those samples that are from feces,
# skin, or tongue,
# and creates data frame from the collected data
df <- as.data.frame(colData(tse)[colData(tse)$SampleType %in%
  c("Feces", "Skin", "Tongue"),
  ])

# Changes old levels with new levels
df$SampleType <- factor(df$SampleType)

# For significance testing, all different combinations are
# determined
comb <- split(t(combn(levels(df$SampleType), 2)),
  seq(nrow(t(combn(levels(df$SampleType), 2)))))

ggplot(df, aes(x = SampleType, y = shannon)) +
  # Outliers are removed, because otherwise each data point would
  # be plotted twice;
  # as an outlier of boxplot and as a point of dotplot.
  geom_boxplot(outlier.shape = NA) +
  geom_jitter(width = 0.2) +
  geom_signif(comparisons = comb, map_signif_level = FALSE) +
  theme(text = element_text(size = 10))
```



### 7.1.3 Faith phylogenetic diversity

The Faith index is returned by the function `estimateFaith`.

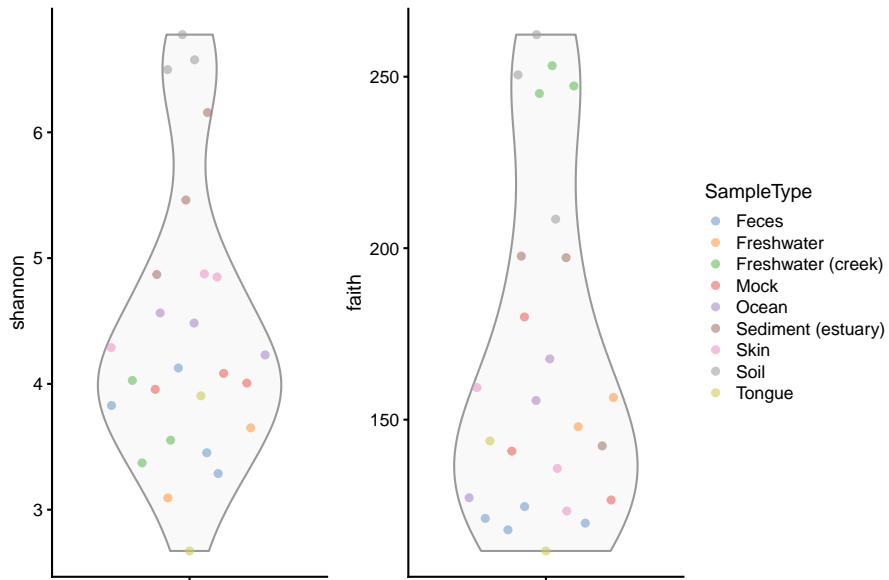
```
tse <- mia::estimateFaith(tse,
                           assay_name = "counts")
head(colData(tse)$faith)
```

```
## [1] 250.5 262.3 208.5 117.9 119.8 135.8
```

**Note:** because `tse` is a `TreeSummarizedExperiment` object, its phylogenetic tree is used by default. However, the optional argument `tree` must be provided if `tse` does not contain one.

Below a visual comparison between shannon and faith indices is shown with a violin plot.

```
plots <- lapply(c("shannon", "faith"),
                 plotColData,
                 object = tse, colour_by = "SampleType")
plots[[1]] + plots[[2]] +
  plot_layout(guides = "collect")
```



Alternatively, the phylogenetic diversity can be calculated by `mia::estimateDiversity`. This is a faster re-implementation of the widely used function in `picante` (Kembel et al., 2010, W et al. (2010)).

Load `picante` R package and get the `phylo` stored in `rowTree`.

```
tse <- mia::estimateDiversity(tse,
                               assay_name = "counts",
                               index = "faith",
                               name = "faith")
```

#### 7.1.4 Evenness

Evenness can be calculated with `estimateEvenness`.

```
tse <- estimateEvenness(tse,
                         assay_name = "counts",
                         index="simpson")
head(colData(tse)$simpson)
```

```
## [1] 0.026871 0.027197 0.047049 0.005179 0.004304 0.005011
```

### 7.1.5 Dominance

Dominance can be calculated with `estimateDominance`. Here, the `Relative index` is calculated which is the relative abundance of the most dominant species in the sample.

```
tse <- estimateDominance(tse,
                           assay_name = "counts",
                           index="relative")

head(colData(tse)$relative)

##      CL3      CC1      SV1 M31Fcsw M11Fcsw M31Plmr
## 0.03910 0.03226 0.01690 0.22981 0.21778 0.22329
```

### 7.1.6 Rarity

`mia` package provides one rarity index called log-modulo skewness. It can be calculated with `estimateDiversity`.

```
tse <- mia::estimateDiversity(tse,
                               assay_name = "counts",
                               index = "log_modulo_skewness")

head(colData(tse)$log_modulo_skewness)

## [1] 2.061 2.061 2.061 2.061 2.061 2.061
```

### 7.1.7 Divergence

Divergence can be evaluated with `estimateDivergence`. Reference and algorithm for the calculation of divergence can be specified as `reference` and `FUN`, respectively.

```
tse <- mia::estimateDivergence(tse,
                               assay_name = "counts",
                               reference = "median",
                               FUN = vegan::vegdist)
```

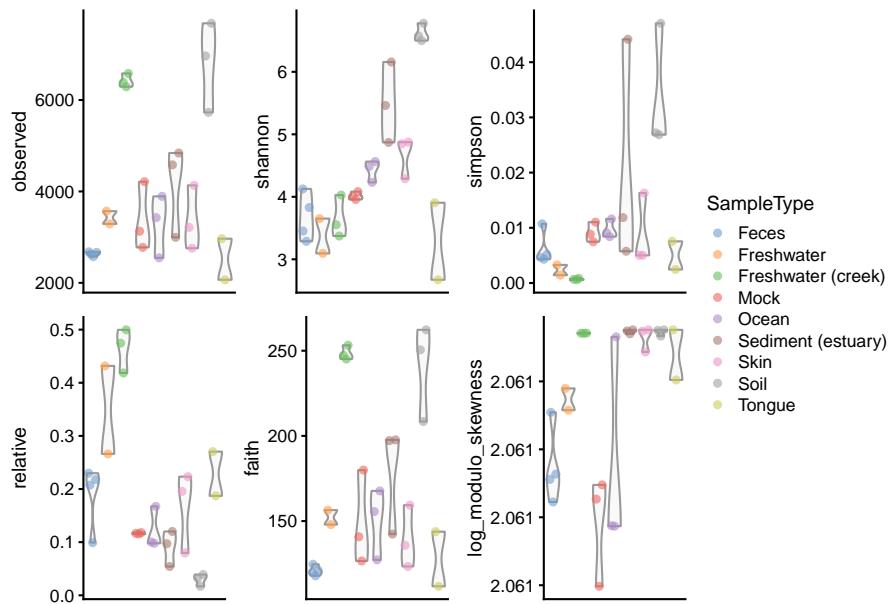
## 7.2 Visualization

A plot comparing all the diversity measures calculated above and stored in `colData` can then be constructed directly.

```
plots <- lapply(c("observed", "shannon", "simpson", "relative",
  "faith", "log_modulo_skewness"),
  plotColData,
  object = tse,
  x = "SampleType",
  colour_by = "SampleType")

plots <- lapply(plots, "+",
  theme(axis.text.x = element_blank(),
        axis.title.x = element_blank(),
        axis.ticks.x = element_blank()))

((plots[[1]] | plots[[2]] | plots[[3]]) /
  (plots[[4]] | plots[[5]] | plots[[6]])) +
  plot_layout(guides = "collect")
```



## Session Info

View session info

```
R version 4.2.1 (2022-06-23)
Platform: x86_64-pc-linux-gnu (64-bit)
Running under: Ubuntu 20.04.4 LTS

Matrix products: default
BLAS:   /usr/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/openblas-pthread/libblas.so.3
LAPACK: /usr/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/openblas-pthread/liblapack.so.3

locale:
[1] LC_CTYPE=en_US.UTF-8        LC_NUMERIC=C
[3] LC_TIME=en_US.UTF-8         LC_COLLATE=en_US.UTF-8
[5] LC_MONETARY=en_US.UTF-8     LC_MESSAGES=en_US.UTF-8
[7] LC_PAPER=en_US.UTF-8       LC_NAME=C
[9] LC_ADDRESS=C                LC_TELEPHONE=C
[11] LC_MEASUREMENT=en_US.UTF-8 LC_IDENTIFICATION=C

attached base packages:
[1] stats4      stats       graphics    grDevices  utils      datasets   methods
[8] base

other attached packages:
[1] patchwork_1.1.2            ggsignif_0.6.3
[3] scater_1.24.0              ggplot2_3.3.6
[5] scuttle_1.6.3               mia_1.5.16
[7] MultiAssayExperiment_1.22.0 TreeSummarizedExperiment_2.1.4
[9] Biostrings_2.64.1           XVector_0.36.0
[11] SingleCellExperiment_1.18.1 SummarizedExperiment_1.26.1
[13] Biobase_2.56.0             GenomicRanges_1.48.0
[15] GenomeInfoDb_1.32.4        IRanges_2.30.1
[17] S4Vectors_0.34.0           BiocGenerics_0.42.0
[19] MatrixGenerics_1.8.1       matrixStats_0.62.0-9003
[21] BiocStyle_2.24.0            rebook_1.6.0

loaded via a namespace (and not attached):
[1] ggbeeswarm_0.6.0            colorspace_2.0-3
[3] BiocNeighbors_1.14.0          farver_2.1.1
[5] ggrepel_0.9.1               bit64_4.0.5
[7] fansi_1.0.3                 decontam_1.16.0
[9] codetools_0.2-18             splines_4.2.1
[11] sparseMatrixStats_1.8.0     cachem_1.0.6
[13] knitr_1.40                  jsonlite_1.8.2
```

```
[15] cluster_2.1.4
[17] BiocManager_1.30.18
[19] assertthat_0.2.1
[21] fastmap_1.1.0
[23] cli_3.4.1
[25] htmltools_0.5.3
[27] rsrvd_1.0.5
[29] glue_1.6.2
[31] reshape2_1.4.4
[33] Rcpp_1.0.9
[35] ape_5.6-2
[37] DECIPHER_2.24.0
[39] xfun_0.33
[41] beachmat_2.12.0
[43] irlba_2.3.5.1
[45] zlibbioc_1.42.0
[47] scales_1.2.1
[49] yaml_2.3.5
[51] gridExtra_2.3
[53] stringi_1.7.8
[55] highr_0.9
[57] tidytree_0.4.1
[59] filelock_1.0.2
[61] rlang_1.0.6
[63] bitops_1.0-7
[65] lattice_0.20-45
[67] labeling_0.4.2
[69] CodeDepends_0.6.5
[71] bit_4.0.4
[73] plyr_1.8.7
[75] bookdown_0.29
[77] generics_0.1.3
[79] DBI_1.1.3
[81] pillar_1.8.1
[83] RCurl_1.98-1.9
[85] dir.expiry_1.4.0
[87] utf8_1.2.2
[89] viridis_0.6.2
[91] blob_1.2.3
[93] digest_0.6.29
[95] munsell_0.5.0
[97] beeswarm_0.4.0
[99] vipor_0.4.5

graph_1.74.0
compiler_4.2.1
Matrix_1.5-1
lazyeval_0.2.2
BiocSingular_1.12.0
tools_4.2.1
gttable_0.3.1
GenomeInfoDbData_1.2.8
dplyr_1.0.10
vctrs_0.4.2
nlme_3.1-159
DelayedMatrixStats_1.18.1
stringr_1.4.1
lifecycle_1.0.2
XML_3.99-0.11
MASS_7.3-58.1
parallel_4.2.1
memoise_2.0.1
yulab.utils_0.0.5
RSQLite_2.2.18
ScaledMatrix_1.4.1
permute_0.9-7
BiocParallel_1.30.3
pkgconfig_2.0.3
evaluate_0.16
purrr_0.3.4
treeio_1.20.2
cowplot_1.1.1
tidyselect_1.1.2
magrittr_2.0.3
R6_2.5.1
DelayedArray_0.22.0
withr_2.5.0
mgcv_1.8-40
tibble_3.1.8
crayon_1.5.2
rmarkdown_2.16
grid_4.2.1
vegan_2.6-2
tidyr_1.2.1
DirichletMultinomial_1.38.0
viridisLite_0.4.1
```

## Chapter 8

# Community similarity

Where alpha diversity focuses on community variation within a community (sample), beta diversity quantifies (dis-)similarities between communities (samples). Some of the most popular beta diversity measures in microbiome research include Bray-Curtis index (for compositional data), Jaccard index (for presence / absence data, ignoring abundance information), Aitchison distance (Euclidean distance for clr transformed abundances, aiming to avoid the compositionality bias), and the Unifrac distances (that take into account the phylogenetic tree information). Only some of the commonly used beta diversity measures are actual *distances*; this is a mathematically well-defined concept and many ecological beta diversity measures, such as Bray-Curtis index, are not proper distances. Therefore, the term dissimilarity or beta diversity is commonly used.

Technically, beta diversities are usually represented as `dist` objects, which contain triangular data describing the distance between each pair of samples. These distances can be further subjected to ordination. Ordination is a common concept in ecology that aims to reduce the dimensionality of the data for further evaluation or visualization. Ordination techniques aim to capture as much of essential information in the data as possible in a lower dimensional representation. Dimension reduction is bound to lose information but the common ordination techniques aim to preserve relevant information of sample similarities in an optimal way, which is defined in different ways by different methods. [TODO add references and/or link to ordination chapter instead?]

Some of the most common ordination methods in microbiome research include Principal Component Analysis (PCA), metric and non-metric multi-dimensional scaling (MDS, NMDS). The MDS methods are also known as Principal Coordinates Analysis (PCoA). Other recently popular techniques include t-SNE and UMAP.

## 8.1 Explained variance

The percentage of explained variance is typically shown for PCA ordination plots. This quantifies the proportion of overall variance in the data that is captured by the PCA axes, or how well the ordination axes reflect the original distances.

Sometimes a similar measure is shown for MDS/PCoA. The interpretation is generally different, however, and hence we do not recommend using it. PCA is a special case of PCoA with Euclidean distances. With non-Euclidean dissimilarities PCoA uses a trick where the pointwise dissimilarities are first cast into similarities in a Euclidean space (with some information loss i.e. stress) and then projected to the maximal variance axes. In this case, the maximal variance axes do not directly reflect the correspondence of the projected distances and original distances, as they do for PCA.

In typical use cases, we would like to know how well the ordination reflects the original similarity structures; then the quantity of interest is the so-called “stress” function, which measures the difference in pairwise similarities between the data points in the original (high-dimensional) vs. projected (low-dimensional) space.

Hence, we propose that for PCoA and other ordination methods, users would report relative stress (varies in the unit interval; the smaller the better). This can be calculated as shown below. For further examples, check the note from Huber lab.

```
# Example data
library(mia)
data(GlobalPatterns, package="mia")

# Data matrix (features x samples)
tse <- GlobalPatterns
tse <- transformCounts(tse, method = "relabundance")

# Add group information Feces yes/no
colData(tse)$Group <- colData(tse)$SampleType=="Feces"

# Quantify dissimilarities in the original feature space
library(vegan)
x <- assay(tse, "relabundance") # Pick relabundance assay
#<-- separately
d0 <- as.matrix(vegdist(t(x), "bray"))

# PCoA Ordination
pcoa <- as.data.frame(cmdscale(d0, k = 2))
names(pcoa) <- c("PCoA1", "PCoA2")
```

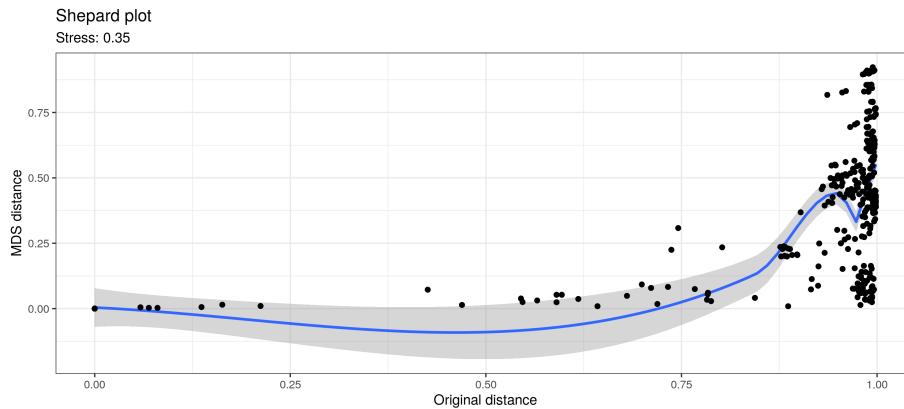
```
# Quantify dissimilarities in the ordination space
dp <- as.matrix(dist(pcoa))

# Calculate stress i.e. relative difference in the original and
# projected dissimilarities
stress <- sum((dp - d0)^2)/sum(d0^2)
```

Shepard plot visualizes the original versus projected (ordination) dissimilarities between the data points:

```
ord <- order(as.vector(d0))
df <- data.frame(d0 = as.vector(d0)[ord],
                 dmds = as.vector(dp)[ord])

library(ggplot2)
ggplot(aes(x = d0, y = dmds), data=df) +
  geom_smooth() +
  geom_point() +
  labs(title = "Shepard plot",
       x = "Original distance",
       y = "MDS distance",
       subtitle = paste("Stress:", round(stress, 2))) +
  theme_bw()
```



## 8.2 Community comparisons by beta diversity analysis

A typical comparison of community composition starts with a visual comparison of the groups on a 2D ordination.

Then we estimate relative abundances and MDS ordination based on Bray-Curtis (BC) dissimilarity between the groups, and visualize the results.

In the following examples dissimilarities are calculated by functions supplied to the `FUN` argument. This function can be defined by the user. It must return a `dist` function, which can then be used to calculate reduced dimensions either via ordination methods (such as MDS or NMDS), and the results can be stored in the `reducedDim`.

This entire process is wrapped in the `runMDS` and `runNMDS` functions.

```
library(scater)

# Bray-Curtis is usually applied to relative abundances
tse <- transformSamples(tse, method = "relabundance")
# Perform PCoA
tse <- runMDS(tse, FUN = vegan::vegdist, method = "bray", name =
  "PCoA_BC", exprs_values = "relabundance")
```

Sample similarities can be visualized on a lower-dimensional display (typically 2D) using the `plotReducedDim` function in the `scater` package. This provides also further tools to incorporate additional information using variations in color, shape or size. Are there visible differences between the groups?

```
# Create ggplot object
p <- plotReducedDim(tse, "PCoA_BC", colour_by = "Group")

# Add explained variance for each axis
e <- attr(reducedDim(tse, "PCoA_BC"), "eig");
rel_eig <- e/sum(e[e>0])
p <- p + labs(x = paste("PCoA 1 (", round(100 * rel_eig[[1]], 1),
  "%)", ", sep = ""),
  y = paste("PCoA 2 (", round(100 * rel_eig[[2]], 1),
  "%)", ", sep = "))

print(p)
```

With additional tools from the `ggplot2` universe, comparisons can be performed informing on the applicability to visualize sample similarities in a meaningful way.

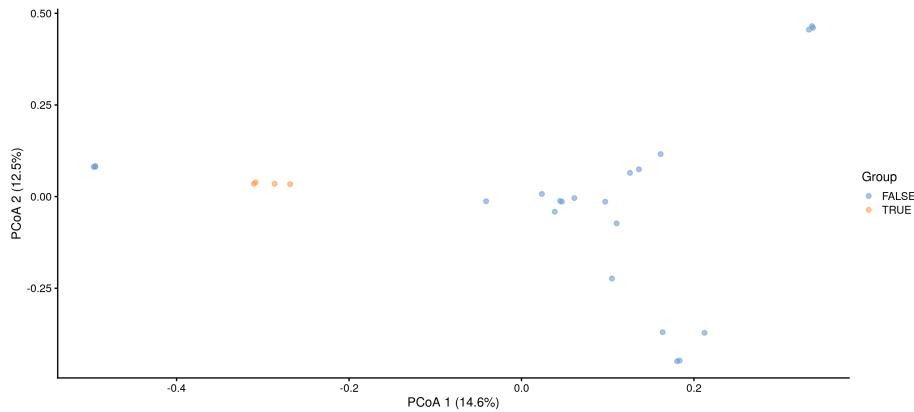


Figure 8.1: MDS plot based on the Bray-Curtis distances on the GlobalPattern dataset.

```
tse <- runMDS(tse, FUN = vegan::vegdist, name = "MDS_euclidean",
               method = "euclidean", exprs_values = "counts")
tse <- runNMDS(tse, FUN = vegan::vegdist, name = "NMDS_BC")

## initial value 47.733208
## iter 5 value 33.853364
## iter 10 value 32.891200
## final value 32.823570
## converged

tse <- runNMDS(tse, FUN = vegan::vegdist, name =
  "NMDS_euclidean",
  method = "euclidean")

## initial value 31.882673
## final value 31.882673
## converged

plots <- lapply(c("PCoA_BC", "MDS_euclidean", "NMDS_BC",
  "NMDS_euclidean"),
  plotReducedDim,
  object = tse,
  colour_by = "Group")

library(patchwork)
```

```
plots[[1]] + plots[[2]] + plots[[3]] + plots[[4]] +
plot_layout(guides = "collect")
```

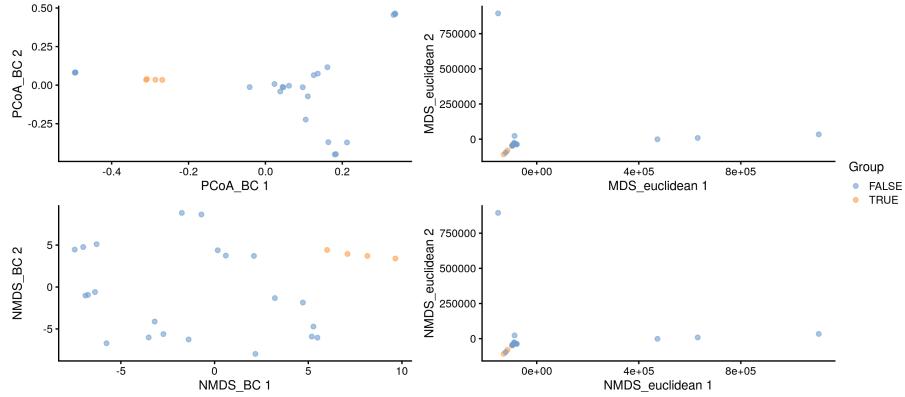


Figure 8.2: Comparison of MDS and NMDS plots based on the Bray-Curtis or euclidean distances on the GlobalPattern dataset.

The *Unifrac* method is a special case, as it requires data on the relationship of features in form on a *phylo* tree. `calculateUnifrac` performs the calculation to return a `dist` object, which can again be used within `runMDS`.

```
library(scater)
tse <- runMDS(tse, FUN = mia::calculateUnifrac, name = "Unifrac",
               tree = rowTree(tse),
               ntop = nrow(tse),
               exprs_values = "counts")

plotReducedDim(tse, "Unifrac", colour_by = "Group")
```

### 8.3 Other ordination methods

Other dimension reduction methods, such as PCA, t-SNE and UMAP are inherited directly from the `scater` package.

```
tse <- runPCA(tse, name = "PCA", exprs_values = "counts",
               ncomponents = 10)
```

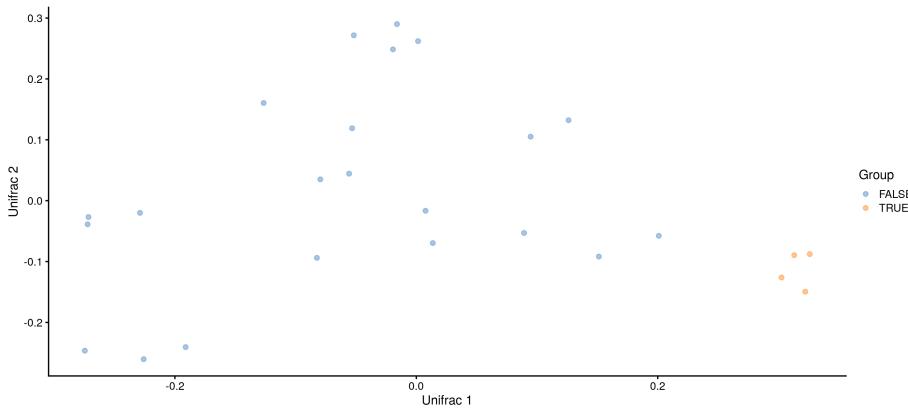


Figure 8.3: Unifrac distances scaled by MDS of the GlobalPattern dataset.

```
plotReducedDim(tse, "PCA", colour_by = "Group")
```

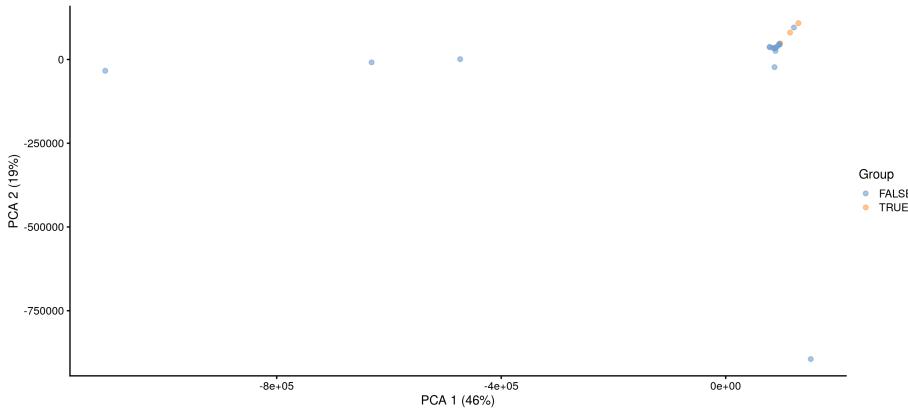


Figure 8.4: PCA plot on the GlobalPatterns data set containing sample from different sources.

As mentioned before, applicability of the different methods depends on your sample set.

FIXME: let us switch to UMAP for the examples?

```
tse <- runTSNE(tse, name = "TSNE", exprs_values = "counts",
  ncomponents = 3)
```

```
plotReducedDim(tse, "TSNE", colour_by = "Group", ncomponents =
  c(1:3))
```

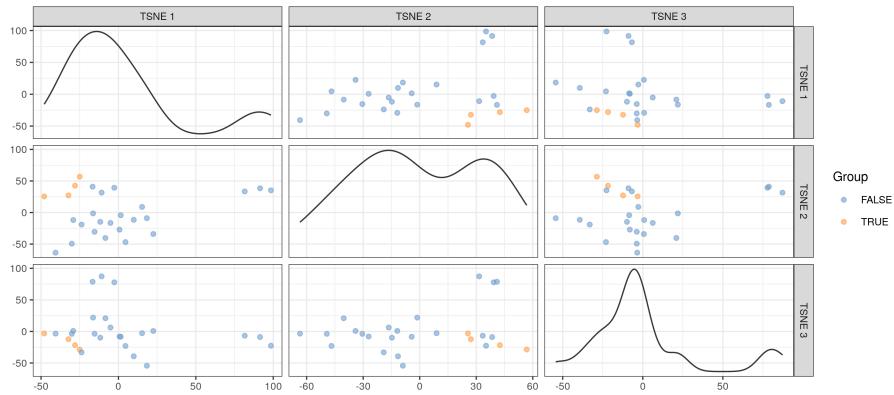


Figure 8.5: t-SNE plot on the GlobalPatterns data set containing sample from different sources.

As a final note, `mia` provides functions for the evaluation of additional dissimilarity indices, such as: \* `calculateJSD`, `runJSD` (Jensen-Shannon divergence) \* `calculateNMDS`, `plotNMDS` (non-metric multi-dimensional scaling) \* `calculateCCA`, `runCCA` (Canonical Correspondence Analysis) \* `calculateRDA`, `runRDA` (Redundancy Analysis) \* `calculateOverlap`, `runOverlap()` \* `calculateDPCoA`, `runDPCoA` (Double Principal Coordinate Analysis)

Redundancy analysis is similar to PCA, however, it takes into account covariates. It aims to maximize the variance in respect of covariates. The results shows how much each covariate affects.

```
# Load required packages
if(!require("vegan")){
  install.packages("vegan")
  library("vegan")
}
if(!require("stringr")){
  install.packages("stringr")
  library("stringr")
}
if(!require("knitr")){
  install.packages("knitr")
  library("knitr")
}
# Load data
```



```

    unconstrained =
    ↵ rda_temp$CA$tot.chi,
proportion =
    ↵ rda_temp$CCA$tot.chi/rda$CA$tot.chi,
    ↵
    p_value = anova.cca(rda_temp,
    ↵ permutations =
    ↵ permutations
    )["Model",
    ↵ "Pr(>F)"]
}
# Convert into data.frame
rda_info <- t(as.data.frame(rda_info))
rda_info_clean <- rda_info
# Adjust names
colnames(rda_info_clean) <-
  c("Explained by variables", "Unexplained by variables",
  ↵ "Proportion expl by vars",
  ↵ paste0("P-value (PERMANOVA ", permutations, "
  ↵ permutations)"))
# Print info
kable(rda_info_clean)

```

	Explained by variables	Unexplained by variables	Proportion expl by vars	P-val
all	35.30	191.7	0.1842	
ClinicalStatus	19.08	209.9	0.0996	
Gender	5.31	223.7	0.0277	
Age	10.59	216.4	0.0552	

```

# Load ggord for plotting
if(!require("ggord")){
  if(!require("devtools")){
    install.packages("devtools")
    library("devtools")
  }
  install_github("https://github.com/fawda123/ggord/")
  library("ggord")
}
if(!require("ggplot2")){
  install.packages("ggplot2")
  library("ggplot2")
}
# Since na.exclude was used, if there were rows missing
# information, they were
# dropped off. Subset coldata so that it matches with rda.

```

```

coldata <- coldata[ rownames(rda$CCA$wa), ]

# Adjust names
# Get labels of vectors
vec_lab_old <- rownames(rda$CCA$biplot)

# Loop through vector labels
vec_lab <- sapply(vec_lab_old, FUN = function(name){
  # Get the variable name
  variable_name <- variable_names[ str_detect(name,
  ↵ variable_names) ]
  # If the vector label includes also group name
  if( !any(name %in% variable_names) ){
    # Get the group names
    group_name <- unique(冷data[[variable_name]]) [
    which( paste0(variable_name, unique(
    ↵ coldata[[variable_name]]) ) == name ) ]
    # Modify vector so that group is separated from variable
    ↵ name
    new_name <- paste0(variable_name, " \U2012 ", group_name)
  } else{
    new_name <- name
  }
  # Add percentage how much this variable explains, and p-value
  new_name <- expr(paste(!new_name, " (",
    !!format(round(
      ↵ rda_info[variable_name,
      ↵ "proportion"]*100, 1), nsmall =
      ↵ 1),
      "%", ", italic("P"), " = ",
      !!gsub("0\\\\.","\\.", format(round(
        ↵ rda_info[variable_name,
        ↵ "p_value"], 3),
          nsmall =
            ↵ 3)),
            ↵ ")"))
  }

  return(new_name)
})
# Add names
names(vec_lab) <- vec_lab_old

# Create labels for axis
xlab <- paste0("RDA1 (", format(round(
  ↵ rda$CCA$eig[[1]]/rda$CCA$tot.chi*100, 1), nsmall = 1 ), "%"))

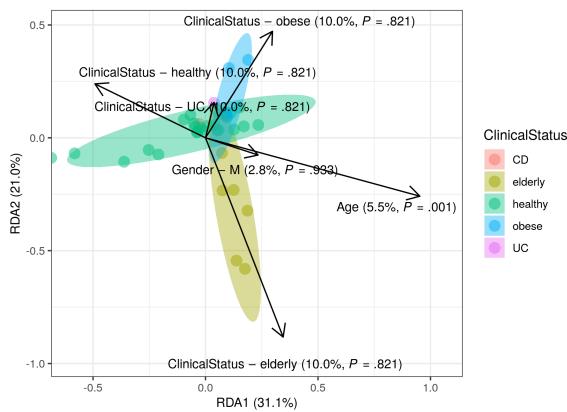
```

```

ylab <- paste0("RDA2 (", format(round(
  ~ rda$CCA$eig[[2]]/rda$CCA$tot.chi*100, 1), nsmall = 1 ), "%)")

# Create a plot
plot <- ggord(rda, grp_in = coldata[["ClinicalStatus"]], vec_lab
  ~ = vec_lab,
  alpha = 0.5,
  size = 4, addsize = -4,
  #ext= 0.7,
  txt = 3.5, repel = TRUE,
  #coord_fix = FALSE
) +
# Adjust titles and labels
guides(colour = guide_legend("ClinicalStatus"),
  fill = guide_legend("ClinicalStatus"),
  group = guide_legend("ClinicalStatus"),
  shape = guide_legend("ClinicalStatus"),
  x = guide_axis(xlab),
  y = guide_axis(ylab)) +
theme( axis.title = element_text(size = 10) )
plot

```



From RDA plot, we can see that only age has significant affect on microbial profile.

## 8.4 Visualizing the most dominant genus on PCoA

In this section we visualize most dominant genus on PCoA. A similar visualization was proposed in Taxonomic signatures of cause-specific mortality risk in human gut microbiome, Salosensaari et al. (2021).

Let us agglomerate the data at a Genus level and getting the dominant taxa per sample.

```
# Agglomerate to genus level
tse_Genus <- agglomerateByRank(tse, rank="Genus")
# Convert to relative abundances
tse_Genus <- transformSamples(tse, method = "relabundance",
  assay_name="counts")
# Add info on dominant genus per sample
tse_Genus <- addPerSampleDominantTaxa(tse_Genus,
  assay_name="relabundance", name = "dominant_taxa")
```

Performing PCoA with Bray-Curtis dissimilarity.

```
tse_Genus <- runMDS(tse_Genus, FUN = vegan::vegdist,
  name = "PCoA_BC", exprs_values = "relabundance")
```

Getting top taxa and visualizing the abundance on PCoA.

```
# Getting the top taxa
top_taxa <- getTopTaxa(tse_Genus,top = 6, assay_name =
  "relabundance")

# Naming all the rest of non top-taxa as "Other"
most_abundant <- lapply(colData(tse_Genus)$dominant_taxa,
  function(x){if (x %in% top_taxa) {x} else
    {"Other"}})

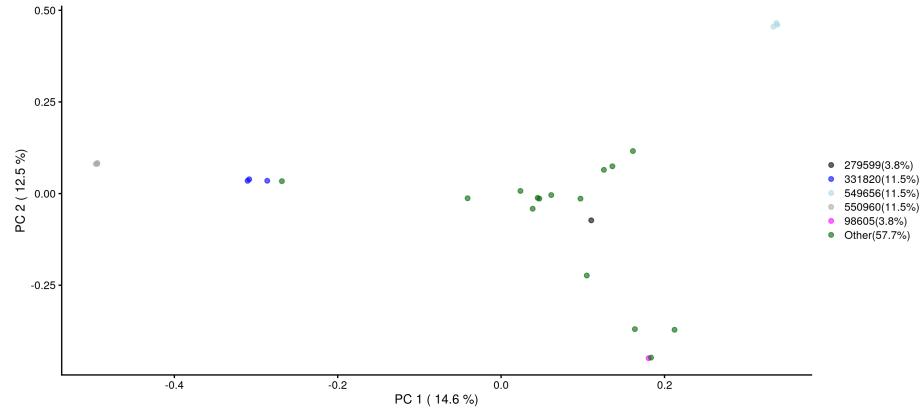
# Storing the previous results as a new column within colData
colData(tse_Genus)$most_abundant <- as.character(most_abundant)

# Calculating percentage of the most abundant
most_abundant_freq <- table(as.character(most_abundant))
most_abundant_percent <-
  round(most_abundant_freq/sum(most_abundant_freq)*100, 1)

# Retrieving the explained variance
```

```
e <- attr(reducedDim(tse_Genus, "PCoA_BC"), "eig");
var_explained <- e/sum(e[e>0])*100

# Visualization
plot <- plotReducedDim(tse_Genus, "PCoA_BC", colour_by =
  "most_abundant") +
  scale_colour_manual(values = c("black", "blue", "lightblue",
    "darkgray", "magenta", "darkgreen", "red"),
    labels=paste0(names(most_abundant_percent), "(", most_abundant_percent, "%)"),
  labs(x= paste("PC 1 (", round(var_explained[1], 1), "%)"),
    y= paste("PC 2 (", round(var_explained[2], 1), "%)"),
    color=""))
plot
```



Note: A 3D interactive version of the earlier plot can be found from here.

Similarly let's visualize and compare the sub-population.

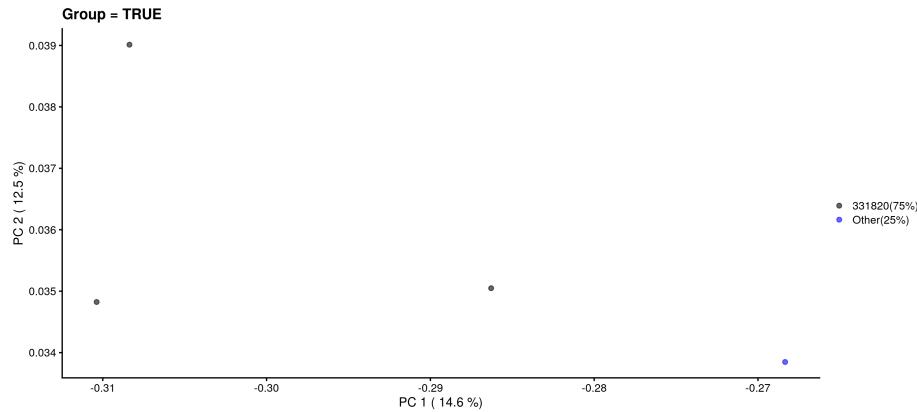
```
# Calculating the frequencies and percentages for both categories
freq_TRUE <-
  table(as.character(most_abundant[colData(tse_Genus)$Group==TRUE]))
freq_FALSE <-
  table(as.character(most_abundant[colData(tse_Genus)$Group==FALSE]))
percent_TRUE <- round(freq_TRUE/sum(freq_TRUE)*100, 1)
percent_FALSE <- round(freq_FALSE/sum(freq_FALSE)*100, 1)

# Visualization
plotReducedDim(tse_Genus[, colData(tse_Genus)$Group==TRUE],
  "PCoA_BC", colour_by = "most_abundant") +
  scale_colour_manual(values = c("black", "blue", "lightblue",
    "darkgray", "magenta", "darkgreen", "red"),
```

```

    ↵ labels=paste0(names(percent_TRUE),"(",percent_TRUE,"%)")+
  labs(x=paste("PC 1 (",round(var_explained[1],1),"%)"),
       y=paste("PC 2 (",round(var_explained[2],1),"%)"),
       title = "Group = TRUE", color="")

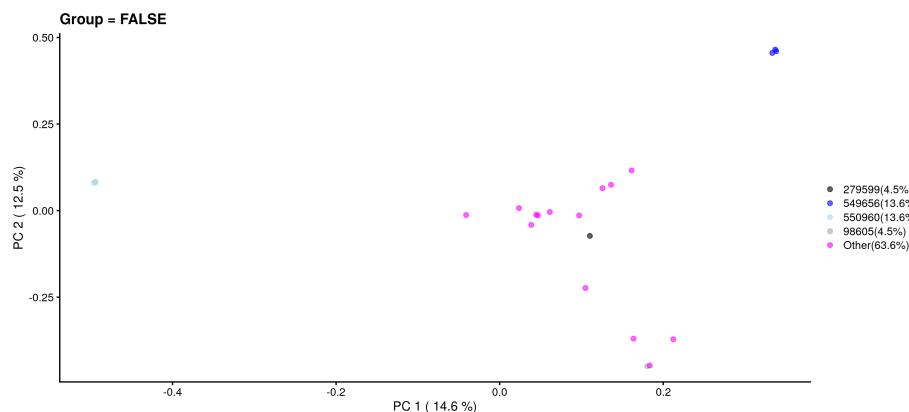
```



```

plotReducedDim(tse_Genus[,colData(tse_Genus)$Group==FALSE],
               "PCoA_BC", colour_by = "most_abundant")
  ↵ +
scale_colour_manual(values = c("black", "blue", "lightblue",
  ↵ "darkgray", "magenta", "darkgreen", "red"),
  ↵
    ↵ labels=paste0(names(percent_FALSE),"(",percent_FALSE,"%)")+
  labs(x=paste("PC 1 (",round(var_explained[1],1),"%)"),
       y=paste("PC 2 (",round(var_explained[2],1),"%)"),
       title = "Group = FALSE", color="")

```



### 8.4.1 Testing differences in community composition between sample groups

The permutational analysis of variance (PERMANOVA) (Anderson, 2001) is a widely used non-parametric multivariate method that can be used to estimate the actual statistical significance of differences in the observed community composition between two groups of samples.

PERMANOVA evaluates the hypothesis that the centroids and dispersion of the community are equivalent between the compared groups. A small p-value indicates that the compared groups have, on average, a different community composition.

This method is implemented in the `vegan` package in the function `adonis2`.

**Note:**

It is recommended to `by = "margin"`. It specifies that each variable's marginal effect is analyzed individually.

When `by = "terms"` (the default) the order of variables matters; each variable is analyzed sequentially, and the result is different when more than 1 variable is introduced and their order is differs. (Check comparison)

We can perform PERMANOVA with `adonis2` function or by first performing distance-based redundancy analysis (dbRDA), and then applying permutational test for result of redundancy analysis. Advantage of the latter approach is that by doing so we can get coefficients: how much each taxa affect to the result.

```
if( !require(vegan) ){
  BiocManager::install("vegan")
  library("vegan")
}
# Agglomerate data to Species level
tse <- agglomerateByRank(tse, rank = "Species")

# Set seed for reproducibility
set.seed(1576)
# We choose 99 random permutations. Consider applying more (999
# or 9999) in your
# analysis.
permanova <- adonis2(t(assay(tse, "relabundance")) ~ Group,
                      by = "margin", # each term (here only
# 'Group') analyzed individually
                      data = colData(tse),
                      method = "euclidean",
                      permutations = 99)
```

```

# Set seed for reproducibility
set.seed(1576)
# Perform dbRDA
dbrda <- dbrda(t(assay(tse, "relabundance")) ~ Group,
                 data = colData(tse))
# Perform permutational analysis
permanova2 <- anova.cca(dbrda,
                           by = "margin", # each term (here only
                           ↵ 'Group') analyzed individually
                           method = "euclidean",
                           permutations = 99)

# Get p-values
p_values <- c(permanova2["Group", "Pr(>F)"], permanova2["Group",
    ↵ "Pr(>F)"])
p_values <- as.data.frame(p_values)
rownames(p_values) <- c("adonis2", "dbRDA+anova.cca")
p_values

##          p_values
## adonis2      0.02
## dbRDA+anova.cca 0.02

```

As we can see, the community composition is significantly different between the groups ( $p < 0.05$ ), and these two methods give equal p-values.

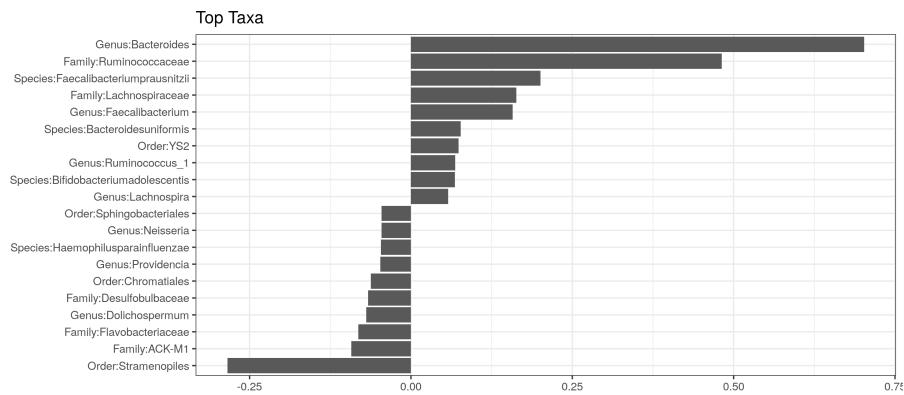
Let us visualize the model coefficients for species that exhibit the largest differences between the groups. This gives some insights into how the groups tend to differ from each other in terms of community composition.

```

# Add taxa info
sppscores(dbrda) <- t(assay(tse, "relabundance"))
# Get coefficients
coef <- dbrda$CCA$v
# Get the taxa with biggest weights
top.coef <- head(coef[rev(order(abs(coef)))], , drop = FALSE],
                  ↵ 20)
# Sort weights in increasing order
top.coef <- top.coef[order(top.coef), ]
# Get top names
top_names <- names(top.coef)[order(abs(top.coef), decreasing =
    ↵ TRUE)]

```

```
ggplot(data.frame(x = top.coef,
                  y = factor(names(top.coef),
                             unique(names(top.coef)))),
       aes(x = x, y = y)) +
  geom_bar(stat="identity") +
  labs(x="",y="",title="Top Taxa") +
  theme_bw()
```



In the above example, the largest differences between the two groups can be attributed to *Genus:Bacteroides* (elevated in the first group) and *Family:Ruminococcaceae* (elevated in the second group), and many other co-varying species.

#### 8.4.2 Checking the homogeneity condition

It is important to note that the application of PERMANOVA assumes homogeneous group dispersions (variances). This can be tested with the PERMDISP2 method (Anderson, 2006) by using the same assay and distance method than in PERMANOVA.

```
anova( betadisper(vegdist(t(assay(tse, "counts"))),
                   colData(tse)$Group) )
```

```
## Analysis of Variance Table
##
## Response: Distances
##           Df Sum Sq Mean Sq F value Pr(>F)
## Groups      1 0.2385  0.2385     103 3.6e-10 ***
## Residuals 24 0.0554  0.0023
```

```
## ---
## Signif. codes: 0 '***' 0.001 '**' 0.01 '*' 0.05 '.' 0.1 ' ' 1
```

If the groups have similar dispersion, PERMANOVA can be seen as an appropriate choice for comparing community compositions.

## 8.5 Further reading

- How to extract information from clusters
- Chapter 10 on community typing

## Session Info

View session info

```
R version 4.2.1 (2022-06-23)
Platform: x86_64-pc-linux-gnu (64-bit)
Running under: Ubuntu 20.04.4 LTS

Matrix products: default
BLAS:    /usr/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/openblas-pthread/libblas.so.3
LAPACK:  /usr/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/openblas-pthread/liblapack.so.3

locale:
[1] LC_CTYPE=en_US.UTF-8        LC_NUMERIC=C
[3] LC_TIME=en_US.UTF-8        LC_COLLATE=en_US.UTF-8
[5] LC_MONETARY=en_US.UTF-8     LC_MESSAGES=en_US.UTF-8
[7] LC_PAPER=en_US.UTF-8       LC_NAME=C
[9] LC_ADDRESS=C                LC_TELEPHONE=C
[11] LC_MEASUREMENT=en_US.UTF-8 LC_IDENTIFICATION=C

attached base packages:
[1] stats4      stats       graphics   grDevices  utils      datasets   methods
[8] base

other attached packages:
[1] ggord_1.1.7            knitr_1.40
[3] stringr_1.4.1          patchwork_1.1.2
[5] scater_1.24.0           scuttle_1.6.3
[7] ggplot2_3.3.6           vegan_2.6-2
[9] lattice_0.20-45         permute_0.9-7
```

```
[11] mia_1.5.16                  MultiAssayExperiment_1.22.0
[13] TreeSummarizedExperiment_2.1.4 Biostings_2.64.1
[15] XVector_0.36.0              SingleCellExperiment_1.18.1
[17] SummarizedExperiment_1.26.1 Biobase_2.56.0
[19] GenomicRanges_1.48.0        GenomeInfoDb_1.32.4
[21] IRanges_2.30.1              S4Vectors_0.34.0
[23] BiocGenerics_0.42.0        MatrixGenerics_1.8.1
[25] matrixStats_0.62.0-9003    BiocStyle_2.24.0
[27] rebook_1.6.0

loaded via a namespace (and not attached):
 [1] Rtsne_0.16                  ggbeeswarm_0.6.0
 [3] colorspace_2.0-3            BiocNeighbors_1.14.0
 [5] farver_2.1.1                ggrepel_0.9.1
 [7] bit64_4.0.5                 fansi_1.0.3
 [9] decontam_1.16.0             codetools_0.2-18
[11] splines_4.2.1               sparseMatrixStats_1.8.0
[13] cachem_1.0.6                jsonlite_1.8.2
[15] cluster_2.1.4               graph_1.74.0
[17] BiocManager_1.30.18         compiler_4.2.1
[19] assertthat_0.2.1            Matrix_1.5-1
[21] fastmap_1.1.0               lazyeval_0.2.2
[23] cli_3.4.1                  BiocSingular_1.12.0
[25] htmltools_0.5.3            tools_4.2.1
[27] rsvd_1.0.5                 gtable_0.3.1
[29] glue_1.6.2                  GenomeInfoDbData_1.2.8
[31] reshape2_1.4.4              dplyr_1.0.10
[33] Rcpp_1.0.9                  vctrs_0.4.2
[35] ape_5.6-2                   nlme_3.1-159
[37] DECIPHER_2.24.0             DelayedMatrixStats_1.18.1
[39] xfun_0.33                   beachmat_2.12.0
[41] lifecycle_1.0.2              irlba_2.3.5.1
[43] XML_3.99-0.11              zlibbioc_1.42.0
[45] MASS_7.3-58.1               scales_1.2.1
[47] parallel_4.2.1              yaml_2.3.5
[49] memoise_2.0.1               gridExtra_2.3
[51] yulab.utils_0.0.5            stringi_1.7.8
[53] RSQLite_2.2.18              highr_0.9
[55] ScaledMatrix_1.4.1           tidytree_0.4.1
[57] filelock_1.0.2              BiocParallel_1.30.3
[59] rlang_1.0.6                  pkgconfig_2.0.3
[61] bitops_1.0-7                 evaluate_0.16
[63] purrr_0.3.4                 labeling_0.4.2
[65] treeio_1.20.2                CodeDepends_0.6.5
[67] cowplot_1.1.1                bit_4.0.4
[69] tidyselect_1.1.2              plyr_1.8.7
```

```
[71] magrittr_2.0.3          bookdown_0.29
[73] R6_2.5.1                generics_0.1.3
[75] DelayedArray_0.22.0     DBI_1.1.3
[77] withr_2.5.0             pillar_1.8.1
[79] mgcv_1.8-40            RCurl_1.98-1.9
[81] tibble_3.1.8             dir.expiry_1.4.0
[83] crayon_1.5.2            utf8_1.2.2
[85] rmarkdown_2.16           viridis_0.6.2
[87] grid_4.2.1               blob_1.2.3
[89] digest_0.6.29           tidyrr_1.2.1
[91] munsell_0.5.0            DirichletMultinomial_1.38.0
[93] beeswarm_0.4.0           viridisLite_0.4.1
[95] vipor_0.4.5
```



# Chapter 9

## Community composition

```
library(mia)
data("GlobalPatterns", package="mia")
tse <- GlobalPatterns
```

### 9.1 Visualizing taxonomic composition

#### 9.1.1 Composition barplot

A typical way to visualize microbiome composition is by using composition barplot. In the following, relative abundance is calculated and top taxa are retrieved for the Phylum rank. Thereafter, the barplot is visualized ordering rank by abundance values and samples by “Bacteroidetes”:

```
library(miaViz)
# Computing relative abundance
tse <- relAbundanceCounts(tse)

# Getting top taxa on a Phylum level
tse_phylum <- agglomerateByRank(tse, rank = "Phylum",
                                onRankOnly=TRUE)
top_taxa <- getTopTaxa(tse_phylum,top = 5, assay_name =
                        "relabundance")

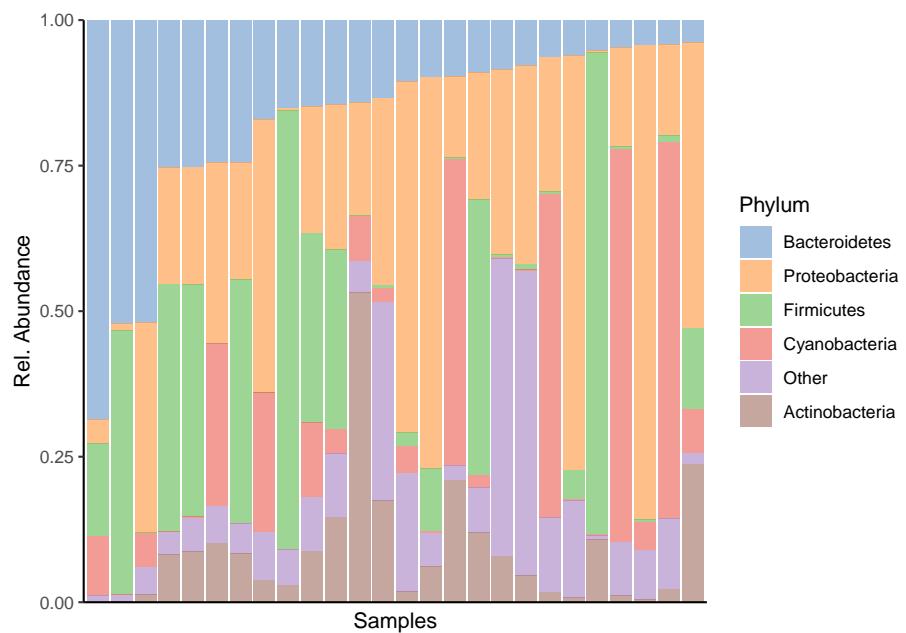
# Renaming the "Phylum" rank to keep only top taxa and the rest
# to "Other"
phylum_renamed <- lapply(rowData(tse)$Phylum,
```

```

function(x){if (x %in% top_taxa) {x} else
  ↪  {"Other"})}
rowData(tse)$Phylum <- as.character(phylum_renamed)

# Visualizing the composition barplot, with samples order by
↪  "Bacteroidetes"
plotAbundance(tse, assay_name="relabundance", rank = "Phylum",
              order_rank_by="abund",
              order_sample_by = "Bacteroidetes")

```



### 9.1.2 Composition heatmap

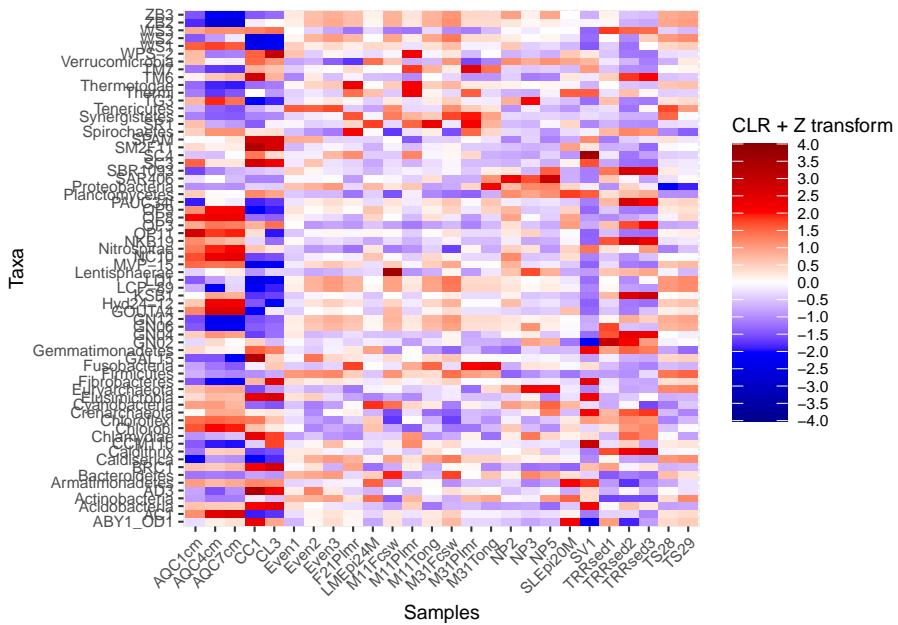
Community composition can be visualized with heatmap, where the horizontal axis represents samples and the vertical axis the taxa. Color of each intersection point represents abundance of a taxon in a specific sample.

Here, abundances are first CLR (centered log-ratio) transformed to remove compositionality bias. Then Z transformation is applied to CLR-transformed data. This shifts all taxa to zero mean and unit variance, allowing visual comparison between taxa that have different absolute abundance levels. After these rough visual exploration techniques, we can visualize the abundances at Phylum level.

```
library(ggplot2)
# Add clr-transformation on samples
tse_phylum <- transformSamples(tse_phylum, method =
  ↵ "relabundance", pseudocount = 1)
tse_phylum <- transformSamples(tse_phylum, assay_name =
  ↵ "relabundance", method = "clr")
# Add z-transformation on features (taxa)
tse_phylum <- transformFeatures(tse_phylum, assay_name = "clr",
  ↵ method = "z", name = "clr_z")
# Melts the assay
df <- meltAssay(tse_phylum, assay_name = "clr_z")

# Determines the scaling of colours
maxval <- round(max(abs(df$clr_z)))
limits <- c(-maxval, maxval)
breaks <- seq(from = min(limits), to = max(limits), by = 0.5)
colours <- c("darkblue", "blue", "white", "red", "darkred")

# Creates a ggplot object
ggplot(df, aes(x = SampleID, y = FeatureID, fill = clr_z)) +
  geom_tile() +
  scale_fill_gradientn(name = "CLR + Z transform",
    ↵ breaks = breaks, limits = limits, colours
    ↵   = colours) +
  theme(text = element_text(size=10),
    ↵ axis.text.x = element_text(angle=45, hjust=1),
    ↵ legend.key.size = unit(1, "cm")) +
  labs(x = "Samples", y = "Taxa")
```



In addition, there are also other packages that provide functions for more complex heatmaps, such as *iheatmapr* and *ComplexHeatmap*. *sechm* package provides wrapper for *ComplexHeatmap* and its usage is explained in chapter 14 along with the *pheatmap* package for clustered heatmaps.

## Session Info

View session info

```
R version 4.2.1 (2022-06-23)
Platform: x86_64-pc-linux-gnu (64-bit)
Running under: Ubuntu 20.04.4 LTS

Matrix products: default
BLAS:    /usr/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/openblas-pthread/libblas.so.3
LAPACK:  /usr/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/openblas-pthread/liblapack.so.3

locale:
[1] LC_CTYPE=en_US.UTF-8          LC_NUMERIC=C
[3] LC_TIME=en_US.UTF-8          LC_COLLATE=en_US.UTF-8
[5] LC_MONETARY=en_US.UTF-8       LC_MESSAGES=en_US.UTF-8
[7] LC_PAPER=en_US.UTF-8          LC_NAME=C
[9] LC_ADDRESS=C                  LC_TELEPHONE=C
```

```
[11] LC_MEASUREMENT=en_US.UTF-8 LC_IDENTIFICATION=C

attached base packages:
[1] stats4      stats       graphics  grDevices utils      datasets  methods
[8] base

other attached packages:
[1] miaViz_1.5.1           ggraph_2.0.6
[3] ggplot2_3.3.6          mia_1.5.16
[5] MultiAssayExperiment_1.22.0 TreeSummarizedExperiment_2.1.4
[7] Biostrings_2.64.1       XVector_0.36.0
[9] SingleCellExperiment_1.18.1 SummarizedExperiment_1.26.1
[11] Biobase_2.56.0         GenomicRanges_1.48.0
[13] GenomeInfoDb_1.32.4    IRanges_2.30.1
[15] S4Vectors_0.34.0       BiocGenerics_0.42.0
[17] MatrixGenerics_1.8.1   matrixStats_0.62.0-9003
[19] BiocStyle_2.24.0        rebook_1.6.0

loaded via a namespace (and not attached):
[1] ggtree_3.4.4              ggnewscale_0.4.7
[3] ggbeeswarm_0.6.0          colorspace_2.0-3
[5] ellipsis_0.3.2            scuttle_1.6.3
[7] BiocNeighbors_1.14.0       subplot_0.1.7
[9] farver_2.1.1              graphlayouts_0.8.2
[11] ggrepel_0.9.1             bit64_4.0.5
[13] fansi_1.0.3               decontam_1.16.0
[15] codetools_0.2-18          splines_4.2.1
[17] sparseMatrixStats_1.8.0   cachem_1.0.6
[19] knitr_1.40                scater_1.24.0
[21] polyclip_1.10-0          jsonlite_1.8.2
[23] cluster_2.1.4             graph_1.74.0
[25] ggforce_0.4.1             BiocManager_1.30.18
[27] compiler_4.2.1            assertthat_0.2.1
[29] Matrix_1.5-1              fastmap_1.1.0
[31] lazyeval_0.2.2            cli_3.4.1
[33] tweenr_2.0.2              BiocSingular_1.12.0
[35] htmltools_0.5.3           tools_4.2.1
[37] igraph_1.3.5              rsvd_1.0.5
[39] gtable_0.3.1              glue_1.6.2
[41] GenomeInfoDbData_1.2.8    reshape2_1.4.4
[43] dplyr_1.0.10              Rcpp_1.0.9
[45] vctrs_0.4.2               ape_5.6-2
[47] nlme_3.1-159              DECIPHER_2.24.0
[49] DelayedMatrixStats_1.18.1  xfun_0.33
[51] stringr_1.4.1             beachmat_2.12.0
[53] lifecycle_1.0.2            irlba_2.3.5.1
```

```
[55] XML_3.99-0.11           zlibbioc_1.42.0
[57] MASS_7.3-58.1            scales_1.2.1
[59] tidygraph_1.2.2          parallel_4.2.1
[61] yaml_2.3.5               memoise_2.0.1
[63] gridExtra_2.3            ggrepel_0.0.7
[65] yulab.utils_0.0.5         stringi_1.7.8
[67] RSQLite_2.2.18            highr_0.9
[69] ScaledMatrix_1.4.1        tidytree_0.4.1
[71] permute_0.9-7             filelock_1.0.2
[73] BiocParallel_1.30.3       rlang_1.0.6
[75] pkgconfig_2.0.3           bitops_1.0-7
[77] evaluate_0.16              lattice_0.20-45
[79] purrr_0.3.4               labeling_0.4.2
[81] patchwork_1.1.2           treeio_1.20.2
[83] CodeDepends_0.6.5          bit_4.0.4
[85] tidyselect_1.1.2           plyr_1.8.7
[87] magrittr_2.0.3              bookdown_0.29
[89] R6_2.5.1                  generics_0.1.3
[91] DelayedArray_0.22.0         DBI_1.1.3
[93] withr_2.5.0                pillar_1.8.1
[95] mgcv_1.8-40                 RCurl_1.98-1.9
[97] tibble_3.1.8                dir.expiry_1.4.0
[99] crayon_1.5.2                utf8_1.2.2
[101] rmarkdown_2.16              viridis_0.6.2
[103] grid_4.2.1                  blob_1.2.3
[105] vegan_2.6-2                 digest_0.6.29
[107] tidyrr_1.2.1                gridGraphics_0.5-1
[109] munsell_0.5.0              DirichletMultinomial_1.38.0
[111] ggplotify_0.1.0             beeswarm_0.4.0
[113] viridisLite_0.4.1           vipor_0.4.5
```

# Chapter 10

## Community typing (clustering)

```
library(mia)
data("GlobalPatterns", package="mia")
tse <- GlobalPatterns
```

Clustering is an unsupervised machine learning technique. The idea of it is to find clusters from the data. A cluster is a group of features/samples that share pattern. For example, with clustering, we can find group of samples that share similar community composition. There are multiple clustering algorithms available.

### 10.1 Hiearchical clustering

Hiearchical clustering is a clustering method that aims to find hiearchy between samples/features. There are two approaches: agglomerative (“bottom-up”) and divisive (“top-down”).

In agglomerative approach, each observation is first unique cluster. Algorithm continues by agglomerating similar clusters. Divisive approach starts with one cluster that contains all the observations. Clusters are splitted recursively to clusters that differ the most. Clustering ends when each cluster contains only one observation.

Hiearchical clustering can be visualized with dendrogram tree. In each splitting point, the three is divided into two clusters leading to hierarchy.

Let's load data from mia package.

```

library(mia)
library(vegan)

# Load experimental data
data(peerj13075)
(tse <- peerj13075)

## class: TreeSummarizedExperiment
## dim: 674 58
## metadata(0):
## assays(1): counts
## rownames(674): OTU1 OTU2 ... OTU2567 OTU2569
## rowData names(6): kingdom phylum ... family genus
## colnames(58): ID1 ID2 ... ID57 ID58
## colData names(5): Sample Geographical_location Gender Age Diet
## reducedDimNames(0):
## mainExpName: NULL
## altExpNames(0):
## rowLinks: NULL
## rowTree: NULL
## colLinks: NULL
## colTree: NULL

```

Hierarchical clustering requires 2 steps. In the fist step, dissimilarities are calculated. In prior to that, data transformation is applied if needed. Since sequencing data is compositional, relative transformation is applied. In the second step, clustering is performed based on dissimilarities.

```

# Apply transformation
tse <- transformSamples(tse, method = "relabundance")
# Get the assay
assay <- assay(tse, "relabundance")
# Transpose assay --> samples are now in rows --> we are
  ← clustering samples
assay <- t(assay)

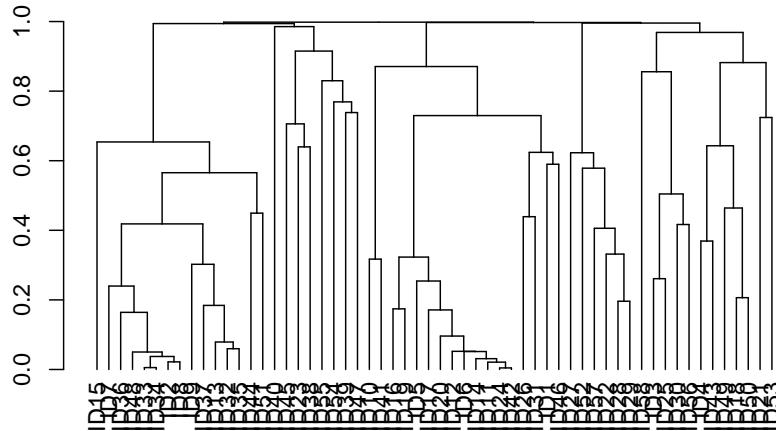
# Calculate distances
diss <- vegdist(assay, method = "bray")

# Perform hierarchical clustering
hc <- hclust(diss, method = "complete")

# To visualize, convert hclust object into dendrogram object
dendro <- as.dendrogram(hc)

```

```
# Plot dendrogram
plot(dendro)
```



We can use dendrogram to determine the number of clusters. Usually, the tree is splitted where the length of branches are the longest.

However, as we can see from the dendrogram, clusters are no clear. Let's use an algorithm to solve the best number of clusters.

```
if( !require(NbClust) ){
  install.packages("NbClust")
  library(NbClust)
}
# Determine the optimal number of clusters
res <- NbClust(diss = diss, distance = NULL, method = "ward.D2",
               index = "silhouette")

##
## Only frey, mcclain, cindex, sihouette and dunn can be computed. To compute the other indices,
## res$Best.nc

## Number_clusters      Value_Index
##           15.0000          0.4543
```

Based on the result, let's divide observations into 15 clusters.

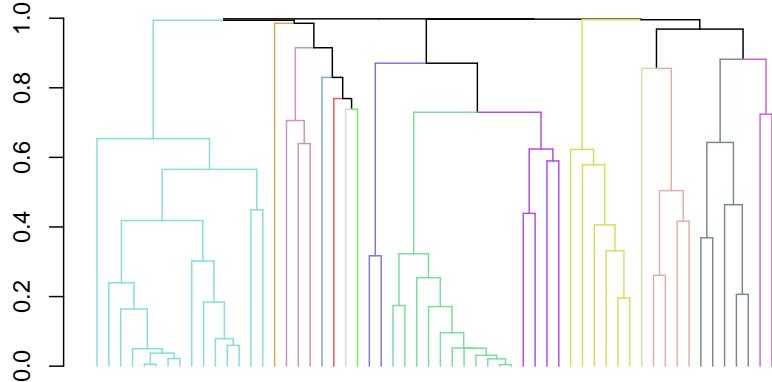
```
if( !require(dendextend) ){
  install.packages("dendextend")
  library(dendextend)
}

# Find clusters
cutree(hc, k = 15)
```

```
##   ID1   ID2   ID3   ID4   ID5   ID6   ID7   ID8   ID9   ID10  ID11  ID12  ID13  ID14  ID15  ID16
##   1     2     3     4     5     5     2     2     2     6     5     5     2     5     2     5     2     5
## ID17 ID18 ID19 ID20 ID21 ID22 ID23 ID24 ID25 ID26 ID27 ID28 ID29 ID30 ID31 ID32
##   5     4     5     5     7     8     9     5     3     1     8     8     8     3     1     2
## ID33 ID34 ID35 ID36 ID37 ID38 ID39 ID40 ID41 ID42 ID43 ID44 ID45 ID46 ID47 ID48
##   2     2     2     2     2     9    10    11    6     5     4     2     9     1    12     2
## ID49 ID50 ID51 ID52 ID53 ID54 ID55 ID56 ID57 ID58
##   4     4     2     8     7    13    14     3     8     15
```

```
# Making colors for 6 clusters
col_val_map <- randomcoloR::distinctColorPalette(15) %>%
  as.list() %>% setNames(paste0("clust_",seq(15)))

dend <- color_branches(dendro, k=15, col=unlist(col_val_map))
labels(dend) <- NULL
plot(dend)
```



## 10.2 K-means clustering

Because, we were not able to find clusters with hierarchical clustering, let's try k-means clustering. In k-means clustering, observations are divided into clusters so that the mean distances between observations and cluster centers are minimized; an observation belongs to cluster whose center is the nearest.

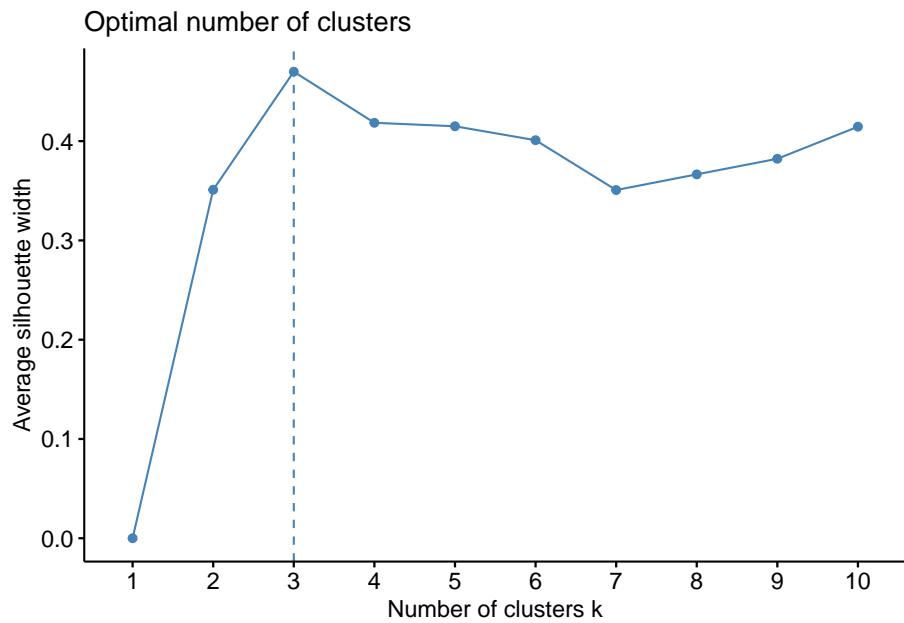
The algorithm starts by dividing observation to random clusters whose number is defined by user. The centroids of clusters are then calculated. After that, observations' allocation to clusters are updated so that the means are minimized. Again, centroid are calculated, and algorithm continues iteratively until the assignments do not change.

The number of clusters can be determined based on algorithm. Here we utilize silhouette analysis.

```
if( !require(factoextra) ){
  install.packages("factoextra")
  library(factoextra)
}

# Convert dist object into matrix
diss <- as.matrix(diss)
```

```
# Perform silhouette analysis and plot the result
fviz_nbclust(diss, kmeans, method = "silhouette")
```



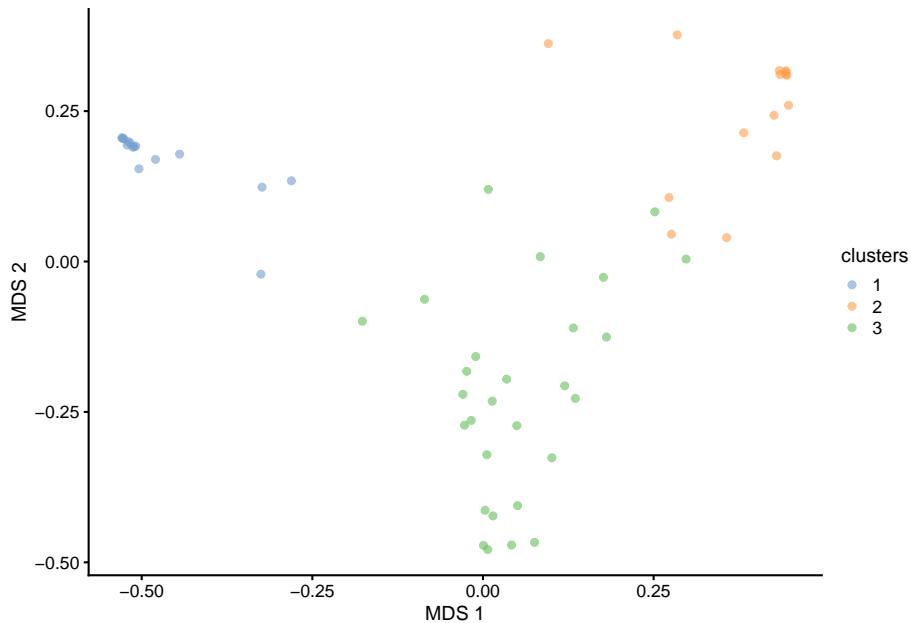
Based on the result of silhouette analysis, we choose 3 to be the number of clusters in k-means clustering.

```
library(scater)

# The first step is random, add seed for reproducibility
set.seed(15463)
# Perform k-means clustering with 3 clusters
km <- kmeans(diss, 3, nstart = 25)
# Add the result to colData
colData(tse)$clusters <- as.factor(km$cluster)

# Perform PCoA so that we can visualize clusters
tse <- runMDS(tse, exprs_values = "relabundance", FUN =
  vegan::vegdist, method = "bray")

# Plot PCoA and color clusters
plotReducedDim(tse, "MDS", colour_by = "clusters")
```



### 10.3 Dirichlet Multinomial Mixtures (DMM)

This section focus on DMM analysis.

One technique that allows to search for groups of samples that are similar to each other is the Dirichlet-Multinomial Mixture Model. In DMM, we first determine the number of clusters ( $k$ ) that best fit the data (model evidence) using Laplace approximation. After fitting the model with  $k$  clusters, we obtain for each sample  $k$  probabilities that reflect the probability that a sample belongs to the given cluster.

Let's cluster the data with DMM clustering.

```
# Runs model and calculates the most likely number of clusters
# from 1 to 7.
# Since this is a large dataset it takes long computational time.
# For this reason we use only a subset of the data; agglomerated
# by Phylum as a rank.
tse <- GlobalPatterns
tse <- agglomerateByRank(tse, rank = "Phylum",
# agglomerateTree=TRUE)
```

```
tse_dmn <- mia::runDMN(tse, name = "DMN", k = 1:7)

# It is stored in metadata
tse_dmn

## class: TreeSummarizedExperiment
## dim: 67 26
## metadata(2): agglomerated_by_rank DMN
## assays(1): counts
## rownames(67): Phylum:Crenarchaeota Phylum:Euryarchaeota ...
##   Phylum:Synergistetes Phylum:SR1
## rowData names(7): Kingdom Phylum ... Genus Species
## colnames(26): CL3 CC1 ... Even2 Even3
## colData names(7): X.SampleID Primer ... SampleType Description
## reducedDimNames(0):
## mainExpName: NULL
## altExpNames(0):
## rowLinks: a LinkDataFrame (67 rows)
## rowTree: 1 phylo tree(s) (66 leaves)
## colLinks: NULL
## colTree: NULL
```

Return information on metadata that the object contains.

```
names(metadata(tse_dmn))
```

```
## [1] "agglomerated_by_rank" "DMN"
```

This returns a list of DMN objects for a closer investigation.

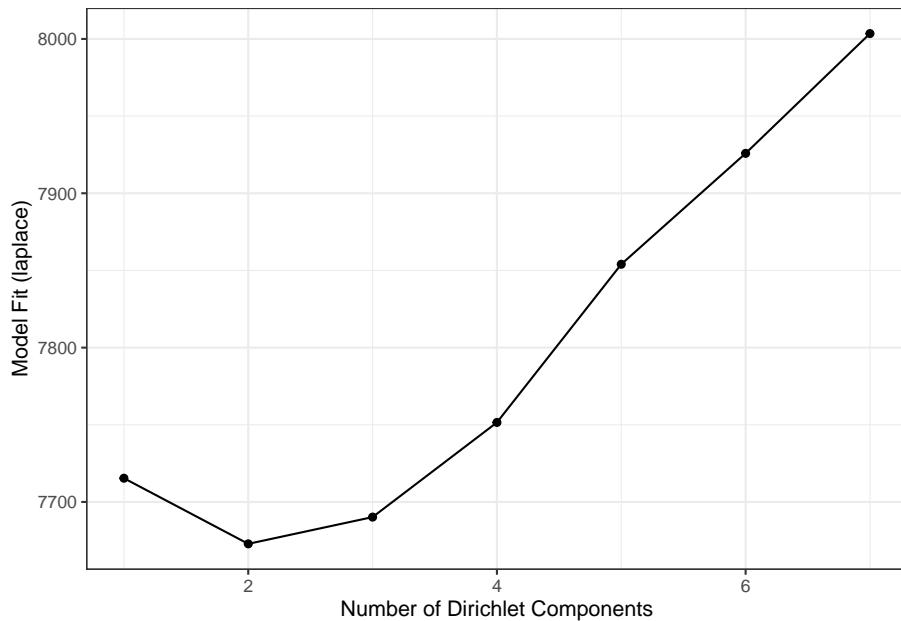
```
getDMN(tse_dmn)
```

```
## [[1]]
## class: DMN
## k: 1
## samples x taxa: 26 x 67
## Laplace: 7715 BIC: 7802 AIC: 7760
##
## [[2]]
## class: DMN
## k: 2
```

```
## samples x taxa: 26 x 67
## Laplace: 7673 BIC: 7927 AIC: 7842
##
## [[3]]
## class: DMN
## k: 3
## samples x taxa: 26 x 67
## Laplace: 7690 BIC: 8076 AIC: 7948
##
## [[4]]
## class: DMN
## k: 4
## samples x taxa: 26 x 67
## Laplace: 7752 BIC: 8274 AIC: 8103
##
## [[5]]
## class: DMN
## k: 5
## samples x taxa: 26 x 67
## Laplace: 7854 BIC: 8553 AIC: 8340
##
## [[6]]
## class: DMN
## k: 6
## samples x taxa: 26 x 67
## Laplace: 7926 BIC: 8796 AIC: 8540
##
## [[7]]
## class: DMN
## k: 7
## samples x taxa: 26 x 67
## Laplace: 8003 BIC: 9051 AIC: 8752
```

Show Laplace approximation (model evidence) for each model of the k models.

```
library(miaViz)
plotDMNFit(tse_dmn, type = "laplace")
```



Return the model that has the best fit.

```
getBestDMNFit(tse_dmn, type = "laplace")
```

```
## class: DMN
## k: 2
## samples x taxa: 26 x 67
## Laplace: 7673 BIC: 7927 AIC: 7842
```

### 10.3.1 PCoA for ASV-level data with Bray-Curtis; with DMM clusters shown with colors

Group samples and return DMNGroup object that contains a summary. Patient status is used for grouping.

```
dmm_group <- calculateDMNGroup(tse_dmn, variable = "SampleType",
  exprs_values = "counts",
  k = 2, seed=.Machine$integer.max)
```

```
dmm_group
```

```
## class: DMNGroup
```

```

## summary:
##          k samples taxa    NLE LogDet Laplace     BIC   AIC
## Feces      2      4  67 1078.3 -106.22   901.1 1171.9 1213
## Freshwater 2      2  67  889.6 -97.21   716.9  936.4 1025
## Freshwater (creek) 2      3  67 1600.3  860.38 1906.4 1674.5 1735
## Mock       2      3  67  980.2 110.61   911.4 1054.4 1115
## Ocean      2      3  67 1096.7 -56.93   944.2 1170.9 1232
## Sediment (estuary) 2      3  67 1195.5  18.63 1080.8 1269.7 1331
## Skin        2      3  67  992.6 -84.93   826.1 1066.8 1128
## Soil        2      3  67 1380.3  11.20 1261.8 1454.5 1515
## Tongue     2      2  67  783.0 -107.77  605.1  829.8  918

```

Mixture weights (rough measure of the cluster size).

```
DirichletMultinomial::mixturewt(getBestDMNFit(tse_dmn))
```

```

##      pi theta
## 1 0.5385 20.60
## 2 0.4615 15.32

```

Samples-cluster assignment probabilities / how probable it is that sample belongs to each cluster

```
head(DirichletMultinomial::mixture(getBestDMNFit(tse_dmn)))
```

```

##      [,1]      [,2]
## CL3    1.000e+00 4.562e-17
## CC1    1.000e+00 3.449e-22
## SV1    1.000e+00 1.794e-12
## M31Fcsw 6.909e-26 1.000e+00
## M11Fcsw 1.028e-16 1.000e+00
## M31Plmr 1.024e-13 1.000e+00

```

Contribution of each taxa to each component

```
head(DirichletMultinomial::fitted(getBestDMNFit(tse_dmn)))
```

```

##      [,1]      [,2]
## Phylum:Crenarchaeota 0.3043 0.1354082
## Phylum:Euryarchaeota 0.2314 0.1468945
## Phylum:Actinobacteria 1.2107 1.0581104
## Phylum:Spirochaetes  0.2141 0.1318102
## Phylum:MVP-15       0.0299 0.0007698
## Phylum:Proteobacteria 6.8408 1.8113562

```

Get the assignment probabilities

```
prob <- DirichletMultinomial::mixture(getBestDMNFit(tse_dmn))
# Add column names
colnames(prob) <- c("comp1", "comp2")

# For each row, finds column that has the highest value. Then
# extract the column
# names of highest values.
vec <- colnames(prob)[max.col(prob,ties.method = "first")]
```

Computing the euclidean PCoA and storing it as a data frame

```
# Does clr transformation. Pseudocount is added, because data
# contains zeros.
tse <- transformCounts(tse, method = "relabundance", pseudocount
# = 1)
tse <- transformCounts(tse, "relabundance", method = "clr")

library(scater)

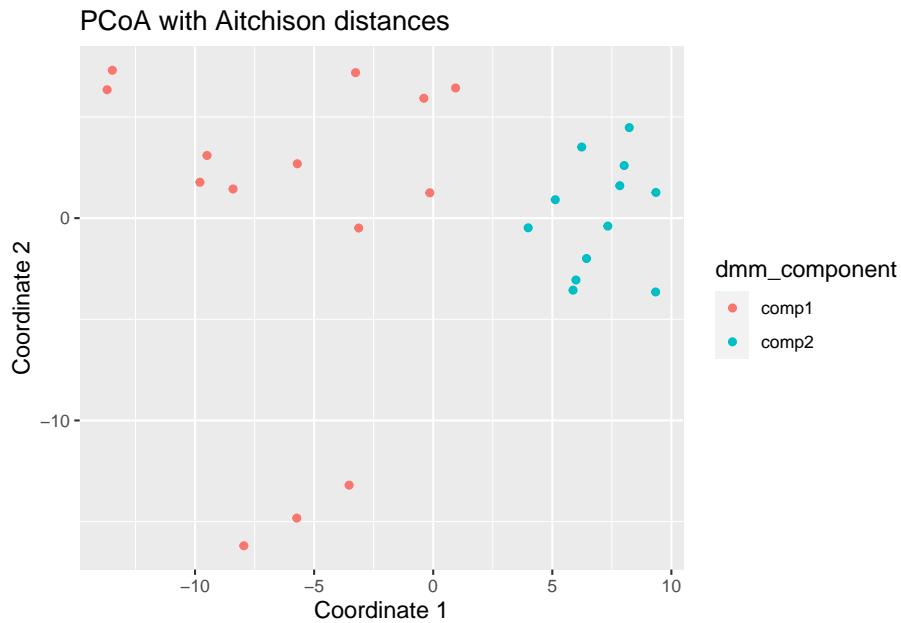
# Does principal coordinate analysis
df <- calculateMDS(tse, exprs_values = "clr", method =
# "euclidean")

# Creates a data frame from principal coordinates
euclidean_pcoa_df <- data.frame(pcoa1 = df[,1],
                                  pcoa2 = df[,2])

# Creates a data frame that contains principal coordinates and
# DMM information
euclidean_dmm_pcoa_df <- cbind(euclidean_pcoa_df,
                                   dmm_component = vec)

# Creates a plot
euclidean_dmm_plot <- ggplot(data = euclidean_dmm_pcoa_df,
                               aes(x=pcoa1, y=pcoa2,
                                   color = dmm_component)) +
  geom_point() +
  labs(x = "Coordinate 1",
       y = "Coordinate 2",
       title = "PCoA with Aitchison distances") +
  theme(title = element_text(size = 12)) # makes titles smaller

euclidean_dmm_plot
```



## 10.4 Community Detection

Another approach for discovering communities within the samples of the data, is to run community detection algorithms after building a graph. The following demonstration builds a graph based on the  $k$  nearest-neighbors and performs the community detection on the fly.

**bluster** (Lun, 2021) package offers several clustering methods, among which graph-based are present, enabling the community detection task.

Installing package:

```
if(!require(bluster)){
  BiocManager::install("bluster")
}
```

The algorithm used is “short random walks” (Pons and Latapy, 2006). Graph is constructed using different  $k$  values (the number of nearest neighbors to consider during graph construction) using the robust centered log ratio (rclr) assay data. Then plotting the communities using UMAP (McInnes et al., 2018) ordination as a visual exploration aid. In the following demonstration we use the **enterotype** dataset from the (Ernst et al., 2020) package.

```

library(bluster)
library(patchwork) # For arranging several plots as a grid
library(scater)

data("enterotype", package="mia")
tse <- enterotype
tse <- transformCounts(tse, method = "rclr")

# Performing and storing UMAP
tse <- runUMAP(tse, name="UMAP", exprs_values="rclr")

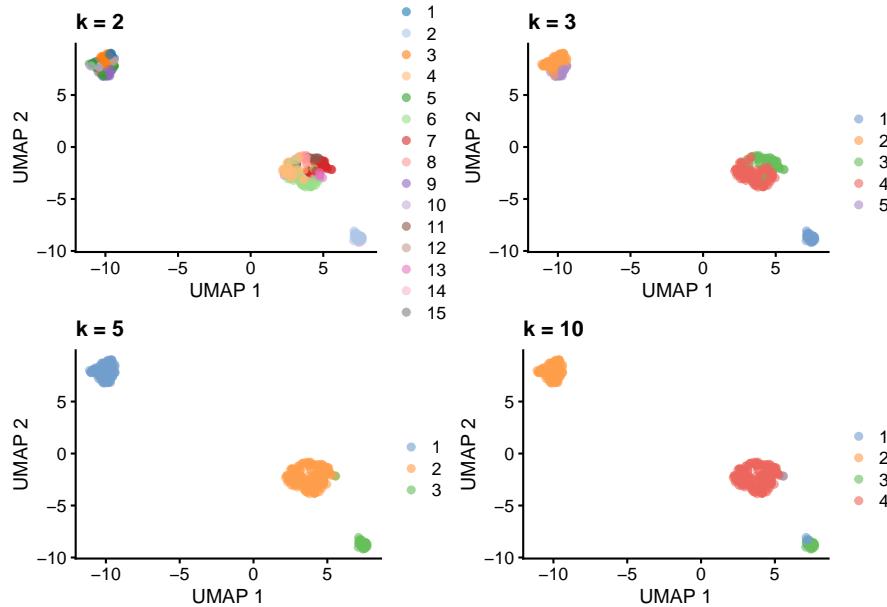
k <- c(2,3,5,10)
ClustAndPlot <- function(x) {
  # Creating the graph and running the short random walks
  # algorithm
  graph_clusters <- clusterRows(t(assays(tse)$rclr),
  NNGraphParam(k=x))

  # Results of the clustering as a color for each sample
  plotUMAP(tse, colour_by = I(graph_clusters)) +
    labs(title = paste0("k = ", x))
}

# Applying the function for different k values
plots <- lapply(k,ClustAndPlot)

# Displaying plots in a grid
(plot[[1]] + plot[[2]]) / (plot[[3]] + plot[[4]])

```



Similarly, the *bluster* (Lun, 2021) package offers clustering diagnostics that can be used for judging the clustering quality (see Assorted clustering diagnostics). In the following, Silhouette width as a diagnostic tool is computed and results are visualized for each case presented earlier. For more about Silhouettes read (Rousseeuw, 1987).

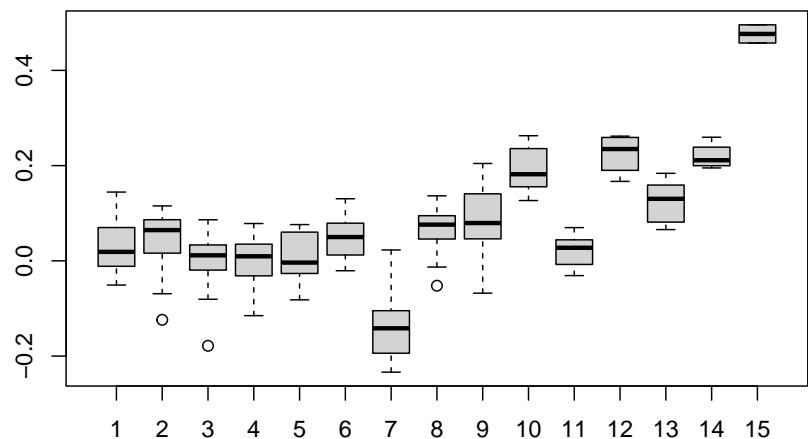
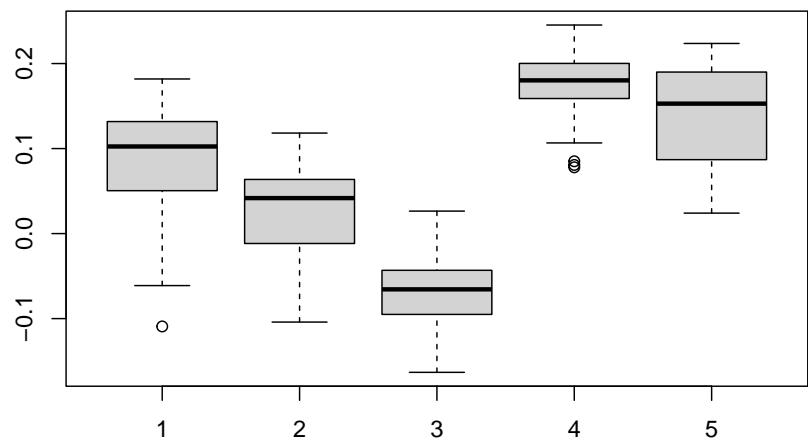
```
ClustDiagPlot <- function(x) {
  # Getting the clustering results
  graph_clusters <- clusterRows(t(assays(tse)$rclr),
    NNGraphParam(k=x))

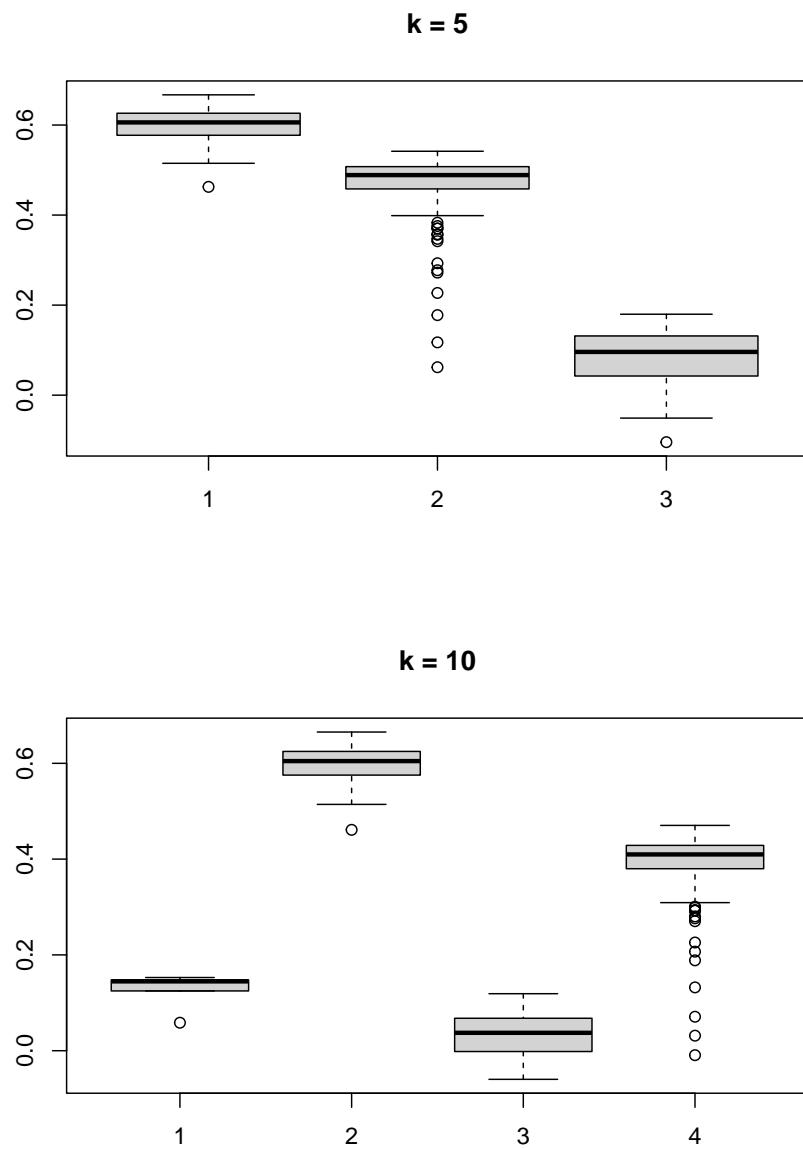
  # Computing the diagnostic info
  sil <- approxSilhouette(t(assays(tse)$rclr), graph_clusters)

  # Plotting as a boxplot to observe cluster separation
  boxplot(split(sil$width, graph_clusters), main=paste0("k = ",
    x))

}

# Applying the function for different k values
res <- lapply(k, ClustDiagPlot)
```

**k = 2****k = 3**



## 10.5 Biclustering

Biclustering methods cluster rows and columns simultaneously in order to find subsets of correlated features/samples.

Here, we use following packages:

- *biclust*
- *cobiclust*

*cobiclust* is especially developed for microbiome data whereas *biclust* is more general method. In this section, we show three different cases and example solutions to apply biclustering to them.

1. Taxa vs samples
2. Taxa vs biomolecule/biomarker
3. Taxa vs taxa

Biclusters can be visualized using heatmap or boxplot, for instance. For checking purposes, also scatter plot might be valid choice.

Check more ideas for heatmaps from chapters 14 and @ref(microbiome-community).

### 10.5.1 Taxa vs samples

When you have microbial abundance matrices, we suggest to use *cobiclust* which is designed for microbial data.

Load example data

```
library(mia)
data("HintikkaXOData")
mae <- HintikkaXOData
```

Only the most prevalent taxa are included in analysis.

```
# Subset data in the first experiment
mae[[1]] <- subsetByPrevalentTaxa(mae[[1]], rank = "Genus",
                                   prevalence = 0.2, detection = 0.001)
# clr-transform in the first experiment
mae[[1]] <- transformSamples(mae[[1]], method = "relabundance",
                               pseudocount = 1)
mae[[1]] <- transformSamples(mae[[1]], "relabundance", method =
                               "clr")
```

*cobiclust* takes counts table as an input and gives *cobiclust* object as an output. It includes clusters for taxa and samples.

```

if(!require(cobiclust)){
  install.packages("cobiclust")
  library(cobiclust)
}

# Do clustering; use counts table
clusters <- cobiclust(assay(mae[[1]]), "counts")

# Get clusters
row_clusters <- clusters$classification$rowclass
col_clusters <- clusters$classification$colclass

# Add clusters to rowdata and coldata
rowData(mae[[1]])$clusters <- factor(row_clusters)
colData(mae[[1]])$clusters <- factor(col_clusters)

# Order data based on clusters
mae[[1]] <- mae[[1]][order(rowData(mae[[1]])$clusters),
  ↪ order(colData(mae[[1]])$clusters)]

# Print clusters
clusters$classification

## $rowclass
## [1] 1 1 1 1 2 2 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 2 2 2 1 2 1 1 2 1 2 2 1 1 2 1 1 1 1 2 1 1 1
## [39] 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 2 1 2 1 1 1 2 1 1 1
##
## $colclass
## C1 C2 C3 C4 C5 C6 C7 C8 C9 C10 C11 C12 C13 C14 C15 C16 C17 C18 C19 C20
## 1 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2
## C21 C22 C23 C24 C25 C26 C27 C28 C29 C30 C31 C32 C33 C34 C35 C36 C37 C38 C39 C40
## 2 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 1

```

Next we can plot clusters. Commonly used plot is heatmap with annotations.

```

if(!require(pheatmap)){
  install.packages("pheatmap")
  library(pheatmap)
}
# z-transform for heatmap
mae[[1]] <- transformFeatures(mae[[1]], assay_name = "clr",
  ↪ method = "z", name = "clr_z")

```

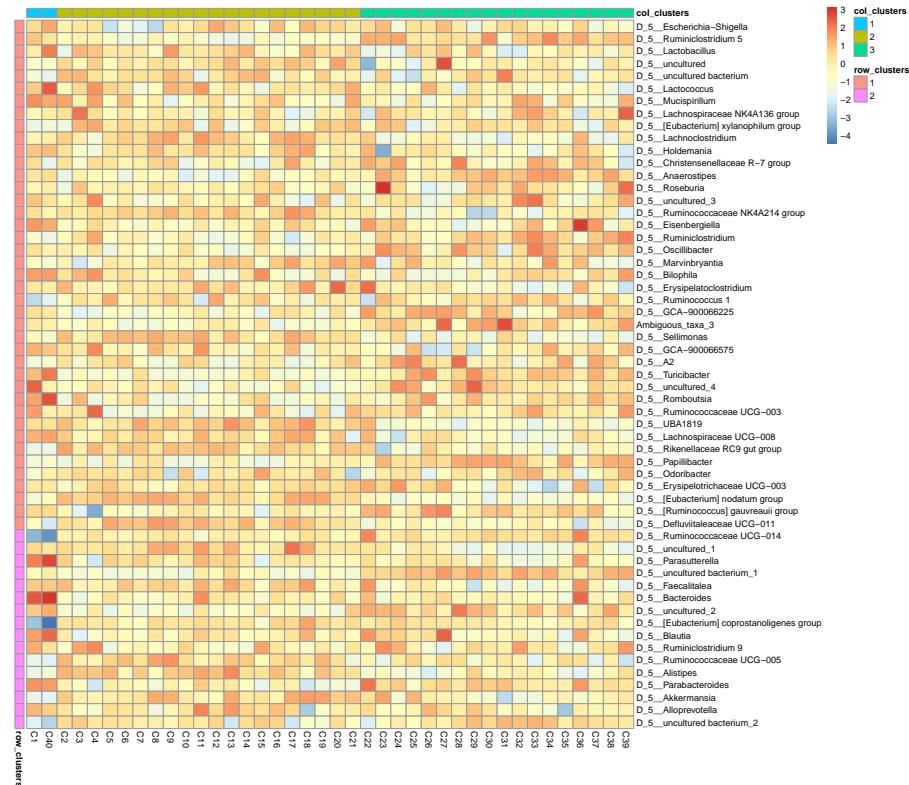
```

# Create annotations. When column names are equal, they should
# share levels.
# Here samples include 3 clusters, and taxa 2. That is why we
# have to make
# column names unique.
annotation_col <- data.frame(colData(mae[[1]])[, "clusters", drop
# = F])
colnames(annotation_col) <- "col_clusters"

annotation_row <- data.frame(rowData(mae[[1]])[, "clusters", drop
# = F])
colnames(annotation_row) <- "row_clusters"

# Create a heatmap
pheatmap(assay(mae[[1]], "clr_z"), cluster_rows = F, cluster_cols
# = F,
         annotation_col = annotation_col,
         annotation_row = annotation_row)

```



Boxplot is commonly used to summarize the results:

```
if(!require(ggplot2)){
  install.packages("ggplot2")
  library(ggplot2)
}

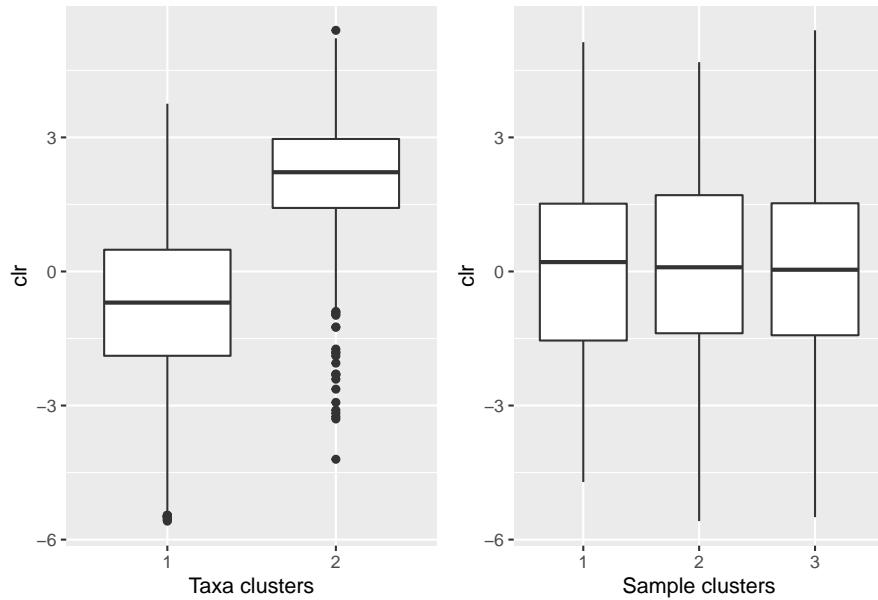
if(!require(patchwork)){
  install.packages("patchwork")
  library(patchwork)
}

# ggplot requires data in melted format
melt_assay <- meltAssay(mae[[1]], assay_name = "clr",
  ↪ add_col_data = T, add_row_data = T)

# patchwork two plots side-by-side
p1 <- ggplot(melt_assay) +
  geom_boxplot(aes(x = clusters.x, y = clr)) +
  labs(x = "Taxa clusters")

p2 <- ggplot(melt_assay) +
  geom_boxplot(aes(x = clusters.y, y = clr)) +
  labs(x = "Sample clusters")

p1 + p2
```



### 10.5.2 Taxa vs biomolecules

Here, we analyze cross-correlation between taxa and metabolites. This is a case, where we use *biclust* method which is suitable for numeric matrices in general.

```
# Samples must be in equal order
# (Only 1st experiment was ordered in cobiclust step leading to
#  ↳ unequal order)
mae[[1]] <- mae[[1]][ , colnames(mae[[2]])]

# Make rownames unique since it is require by other steps
rownames(mae[[1]]) <- make.unique(rownames(mae[[1]]))
# Calculate correlations
corr <- getExperimentCrossCorrelation(mae, 1, 2,
                                         assay_name1 = "clr",
                                         assay_name2 = "nmr",
                                         mode = "matrix",
                                         cor_threshold = 0.2)
```

*biclust* takes matrix as an input and returns *biclust* object.

```
# Load package
if(!require(biclust)){
```

```

install.packages("biclust")
library(biclust)
}

# Set seed for reproducibility
set.seed(3973)

# Find biclusters
bc <- biclust(corr, method=BCPlaid(), fit.model = y ~ m,
              background = TRUE, shuffle = 100, back.fit = 0,
              max.layers = 10,
              iter.startup = 10, iter.layer = 100, verbose =
              FALSE)

bc

## 
## An object of class Biclust
##
## call:
##   biclust(x = corr, method = BCPlaid(), fit.model = y ~ m, background = TRUE,
##           shuffle = 100, back.fit = 0, max.layers = 10, iter.startup = 10,
##           iter.layer = 100, verbose = FALSE)
## 
## There was no cluster found

```

The object includes cluster information. However compared to *cobiclust*, *biclust* object includes only information about clusters that were found, not general cluster.

Meaning that if one cluster size of 5 features was found out of 20 features, those 15 features do not belong to any cluster. That is why we have to create an additional cluster for features/samples that are not assigned into any cluster.

```

# Functions for obtaining biclust information

# Get clusters for rows and columns
.get_biclusters_from_biclust <- function(bc, assay){
  # Get cluster information for columns and rows
  bc_columns <- t(bc@NumberxCol)
  bc_columns <- data.frame(bc_columns)
  bc_rows <- bc@RowxNumber
  bc_rows <- data.frame(bc_rows)

```

```

# Get data into right format
bc_columns <- .manipulate_bc_data(bc_columns, assay, "col")
bc_rows <- .manipulate_bc_data(bc_rows, assay, "row")

return(list(bc_columns = bc_columns, bc_rows = bc_rows))
}

# Input clusters, and how many observations there should be,
# i.e., the number of samples or features
.manipulate_bc_data <- function(bc_clusters, assay, row_col){
  # Get right dimension
  dim <- ifelse(row_col == "col", ncol(assay), nrow(assay))
  # Get column/row names
  if( row_col == "col" ){
    names <- colnames(assay)
  } else{
    names <- rownames(assay)
  }

  # If no clusters were found, create one. Otherwise create
  # additional cluster which
  # contain those samples that are not included in clusters that
  # were found.
  if( nrow(bc_clusters) != dim ){
    bc_clusters <- data.frame(cluster = rep(TRUE, dim))
  } else {
    # Create additional cluster that includes those
    # samples/features that
    # are not included in other clusters.
    vec <- ifelse(rowSums(bc_clusters) > 0, FALSE, TRUE)
    # If additional cluster contains samples, then add it
    if ( any(vec) ){
      bc_clusters <- cbind(bc_clusters, vec)
    }
  }
  # Adjust row and column names
  rownames(bc_clusters) <- names
  colnames(bc_clusters) <- paste0("cluster_",
    1:ncol(bc_clusters))
  return(bc_clusters)
}

# Get biclusters
bcs <- .get_biclusters_from_biclust(bc, corr)

```

```

bicluster_rows <- bcs$bc_rows
bicluster_columns <- bcs$bc_columns

# Print biclusters for rows
head(bicluster_rows)

##                                     cluster_1
## D_5__Ruminiclostridium      5      TRUE
## D_5__uncultured              5      TRUE
## D_5__Lactococcus              5      TRUE
## D_5__Lachnoclostridium       5      TRUE
## D_5__Holdemania              5      TRUE
## D_5__Anaerostipes             5      TRUE

```

Let's collect information for the scatter plot.

```

    }

    return(list)
}

# Calculate info
df <- .sum_mean_median_var(mae[[1]], mae[[2]], "clr", "nmr",
  ↵ bicluster_rows, bicluster_columns)

```

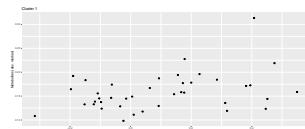
Now we can create a scatter plot. X-axis includes median clr abundance of microbiome and y-axis median absolute concentration of each metabolite. Each data point represents a single sample.

From the plots, we can see that there is low negative correlation in both cluster 1 and 3. This means that when abundance of bacteria belonging to cluster 1 or 3 is higher, the concentration of metabolites of cluster 1 or 3 is lower, and vice versa.

```

pics <- list()
for(i in seq_along(df)){
  pics[[i]] <- ggplot(df[[i]]) +
    geom_point(aes(x = median1, y = median2)) +
    labs(title = paste0("Cluster ", i),
        x = "Taxa (clr median)",
        y = "Metabolites (abs. median)")
  print(pics[[i]])
}

```



```
# pics[[1]] + pics[[2]] + pics[[3]]
```

*pheatmap* does not allow boolean values, so they must be converted into factors.

```

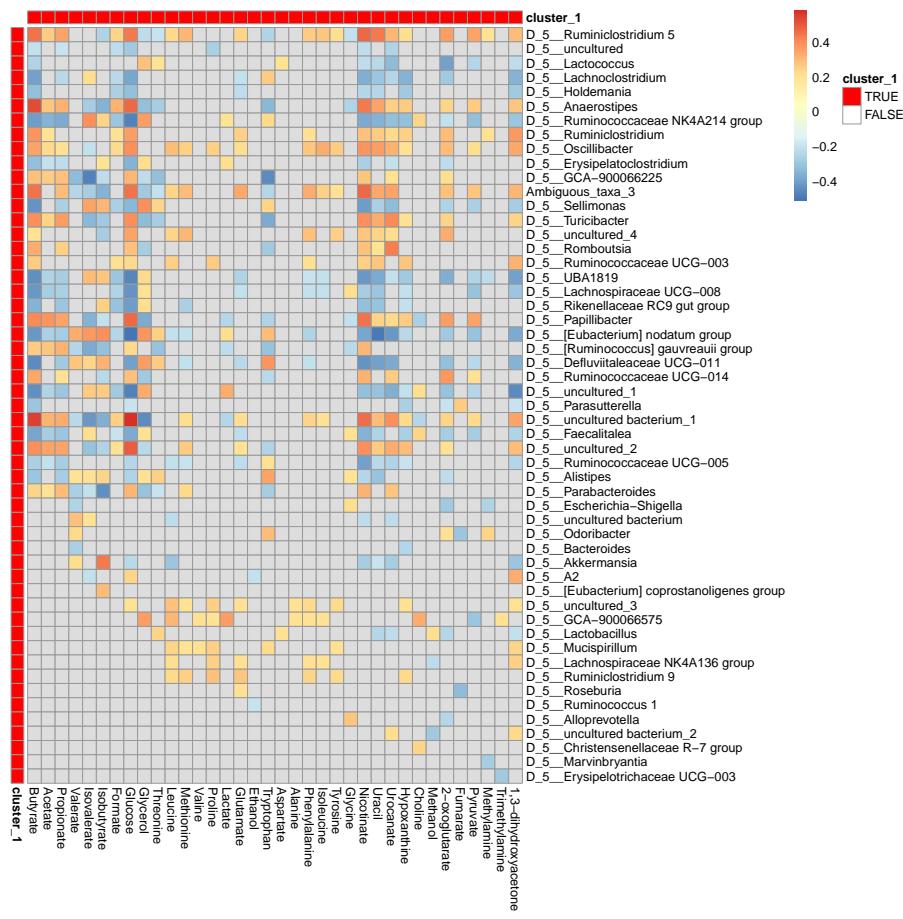
bicluster_columns <- data.frame(apply(bicluster_columns, 2,
  ↵ as.factor))
bicluster_rows <- data.frame(apply(bicluster_rows, 2, as.factor))

```

Again, we can plot clusters with heatmap.

```
# Adjust colors for all clusters
if( ncol(bicluster_rows) > ncol(bicluster_columns) ){
  cluster_names <- colnames(bicluster_rows)
} else {
  cluster_names <- colnames(bicluster_columns)
}
annotation_colors <- list()
for(name in cluster_names){
  annotation_colors[[name]] <- c("TRUE" = "red", "FALSE" =
  "white")
}

# Create a heatmap
pheatmap(corr, cluster_cols = F, cluster_rows = F,
         annotation_col = bicluster_columns,
         annotation_row = bicluster_rows,
         annotation_colors = annotation_colors)
```



### 10.5.3 Taxa vs taxa

Third and final example deals with situation where we want to analyze correlation between taxa. *biclust* is suitable for this.

```

bc <- biclust(corr, method=BCPlaid(), fit.model = y ~ m,
               background = TRUE, shuffle = 100, back.fit = 0,
               ↵ max.layers = 10,
               iter.startup = 10, iter.layer = 100, verbose =
               ↵ FALSE)

# Get biclusters
bcs <- .get_biclusters_from_biclust(bc, corr)

bicluster_rows <- bcs$bc_rows
bicluster_columns <- bcs$bc_columns

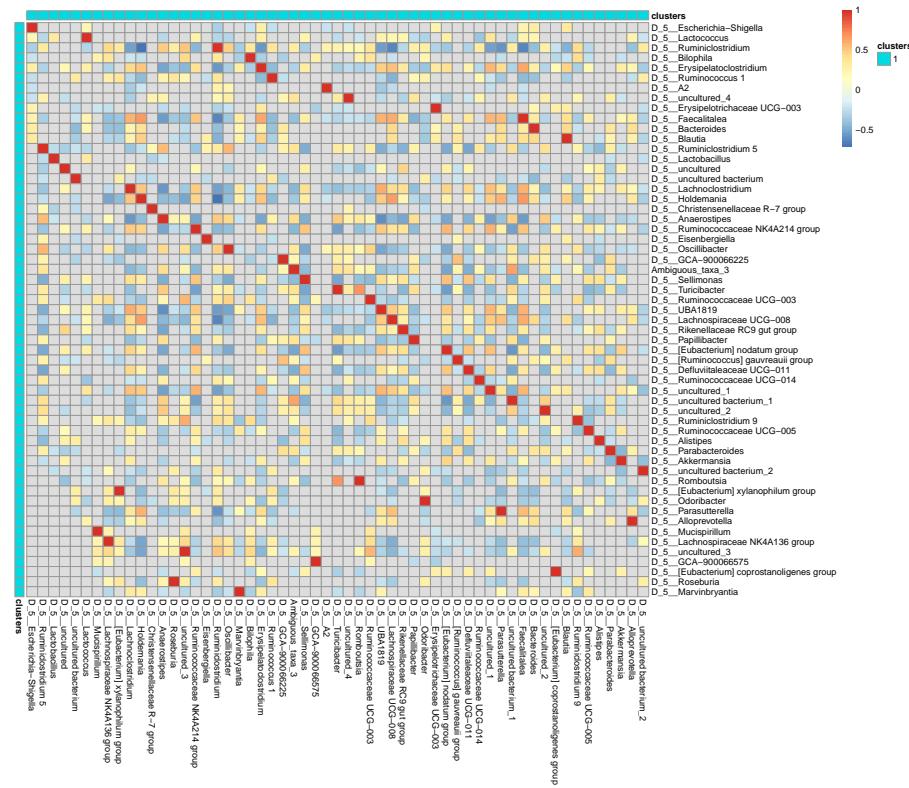
# Create a column that combines information
# If row/column includes in multiple clusters, cluster numbers
# are separated with "_&_"
bicluster_columns$clusters <- apply(bicluster_columns, 1,
                                     
                                      ↵ function(x){paste(paste(which(x)),
                                      ↵ collapse = "_&_") })
bicluster_columns <- bicluster_columns[, "clusters", drop =
                                      ↵ FALSE]

bicluster_rows$clusters <- apply(bicluster_rows, 1,
                                     
                                      ↵ function(x){paste(paste(which(x)),
                                      ↵ collapse = "_&_") })
bicluster_rows <- bicluster_rows[, "clusters", drop = FALSE]

# Convert boolean values into factor
bicluster_columns <- data.frame(apply(bicluster_columns, 2,
                                         ↵ as.factor))
bicluster_rows <- data.frame(apply(bicluster_rows, 2, as.factor))

pheatmap(corr, cluster_cols = F, cluster_rows = F,
          annotation_col = bicluster_columns,
          annotation_row = bicluster_rows)

```



## 10.6 Additional Community Typing

For more community typing techniques applied to the ‘SprockettTHData’ data set, see the attached .Rmd file.

Link:

- Rmd

# Chapter 11

## Differential abundance

### 11.1 Differential abundance analysis

This section provides an overview and examples of *differential abundance analysis (DAA)* based on one of the openly available datasets in mia to illustrate how to perform differential abundance analysis (DAA). DAA identifies differences in the abundances of individual taxonomic groups between two or more groups (e.g. treatment vs control). This can be performed at any phylogenetic level.

We perform DAA to identify biomarkers and/or gain understanding of a complex system by looking at its isolated components. For example, identifying that a bacterial taxon is different between a patient group with disease  $X$  vs a healthy control group might lead to important insights into the pathophysiology. Changes in the microbiota might be cause or a consequence of a disease. Either way, it can help to understand the system as a whole. Be aware that this approach has also been criticized recently (Quinn et al., 2021).

#### 11.1.1 Examples and tools

There are many tools to perform DAA. The most popular tools, without going into evaluating whether or not they perform well for this task, are:

- ALDEx2
- ANCOM-BC
- corncob
- DESeq2
- edgeR
- LEFse
- limma voom
- LinDA

- MaAsLin2
- metagenomeSeq
- t-test
- Wilcoxon test

We recommend to have a look at Nearing et al. (2022) who compared all these listed methods across 38 different datasets. Because different methods use different approaches (parametric vs non-parametric, different normalization techniques, assumptions etc.), results can differ between methods. Unfortunately, as Nearing et al. (2022) point out, they can differ substantially. Therefore, it is highly recommended to pick several methods to get an idea about how robust and potentially reproducible your findings are depending on the method. In this section we demonstrate 4 methods that can be recommended based on recent literature (ANCOM-BC, ALDEx2, Maaslin2 and LinDA) and we will compare the results between them. Note that the purpose of this section is to show how to perform DAA in R, not how to correctly do causal inference. Depending on your experimental setup and your theory, you must determine how to specify any model exactly. E.g., there might be confounding factors that might drive (the absence of) differences between the shown groups that we ignore here for simplicity. However, we will show how you could include covariates in those models. Furthermore, we picked a dataset that merely has microbial abundances in a TSE object as well as a grouping variable in the sample data. We simplify the analysis by only including 2 of the 3 groups.

```
library(mia)
library(patchwork)
library(tidySummarizedExperiment)
library(ALDEx2)
library(Maaslin2)
library(MicrobiomeStat)
library(knitr)
library(tidyverse)

# For ANCOMBC we need development version
# Can be installed with:
# remotes::install_github("FrederickHuangLin/ANCOMBC")
library(ANCOMBC)

# we use the dmn_se dataset and restrict it to
# obese vs lean for easy illustration
data(dmn_se)
se <- dmn_se
# To enable all features and advantages of TreeSE, we convert the
# object from SE to TreeSE
tse <- as(se, "TreeSummarizedExperiment")
tse <- tse[ , colData(tse)$pheno != "Overwt"]
```

```
colData(tse)$pheno <- fct_drop(colData(tse)$pheno, "Overwt")
# how many observations do we have per group?
count(as.data.frame(colData(tse)), pheno) %>% kable()
```

pheno	n
Lean	61
Obese	193

```
# set a seed because some tools can randomly vary and then
  ↵ produce
# different results:
set.seed(1)
```

### 11.1.2 Prevalence Filtering

Before we jump to our analyses, we may want to perform prevalence filtering. Nearing et al. (2022) found that applying a 10% threshold for the prevalence of the taxa generally resulted in more robust results. Some tools have builtin arguments for that. By applying the threshold to our input data, we can make sure it is applied for all tools. Below we show how to do this in `mia`:

```
tse <- subsetByPrevalentTaxa(tse, detection = 0, prevalence =
  ↵ 0.1)
```

### 11.1.3 ALDEx2

In this section, we will show how to perform a simple ALDEx2 analysis. If you wanted to pick a single method, this method could be recommended to use. According to the developers experience, it tends to identify the common features identified by other methods. This statement is in line with a recent independent evaluation by Nearing et al. (2022).

Please also have a look at the more extensive vignette that covers this flexible tool in more depth. ALDEx2 estimates technical variation within each sample per taxon by utilizing the Dirichlet distribution. It furthermore applies the centered-log-ratio transformation (or closely related log-ratio transforms). Depending on the experimental setup, it will perform a two sample Welch's T-test and Wilcoxon-test or a one-way ANOVA and Kruskal-Wallis-test. For more complex study designs, there is a possibility to utilize the `glm` functionality within ALDEx2. The Benjamini-Hochberg procedure is applied in any case to correct for multiple testing. Below we show a simple example that illustrates the workflow.

```

# Generate Monte Carlo samples of the Dirichlet distribution for
# each sample.
# Convert each instance using the centred log-ratio transform.
# This is the input for all further analyses.
x <- aldex.clr(
  reads = assay(tse),
  conds = colData(tse)$pheno,
  # 128 recommended for ttest, 1000 for rigorous effect size
  # calculation
  mc.samples = 128,
  denom = "all",
  verbose = FALSE
)
# calculates expected values of the Welch's t-test and Wilcoxon
# rank test on
# the data returned by aldex.clr
x_tt <- aldex.ttest(
  x,
  paired.test = FALSE,
  verbose = FALSE)
# determines the median clr abundance of the feature in all
# samples and in
# groups, the median difference between the two groups, the
# median variation
# within each group and the effect size, which is the median of
# the ratio
# of the between group difference and the larger of the variance
# within groups
x_effect <- aldex.effect(x, CI = TRUE, verbose = FALSE)
# combine all outputs
aldex_out <- data.frame(x_tt, x_effect)

```

Now, we can create a so called Bland-Altman or MA plot (left). It shows the association between the relative abundance and the magnitude of the difference per sample. Next to that, we can also create a plot that shows the dispersion on the x-axis instead of log-ratio abundance. Red dots represent genera that are differentially abundant ( $q \leq 0.1$ ) between the 2 groups. Black points are rare taxa and grey ones are abundant taxa. The dashed line represent an effect size of 1. See Gloor et al. (2016) to learn more about these plots.

```

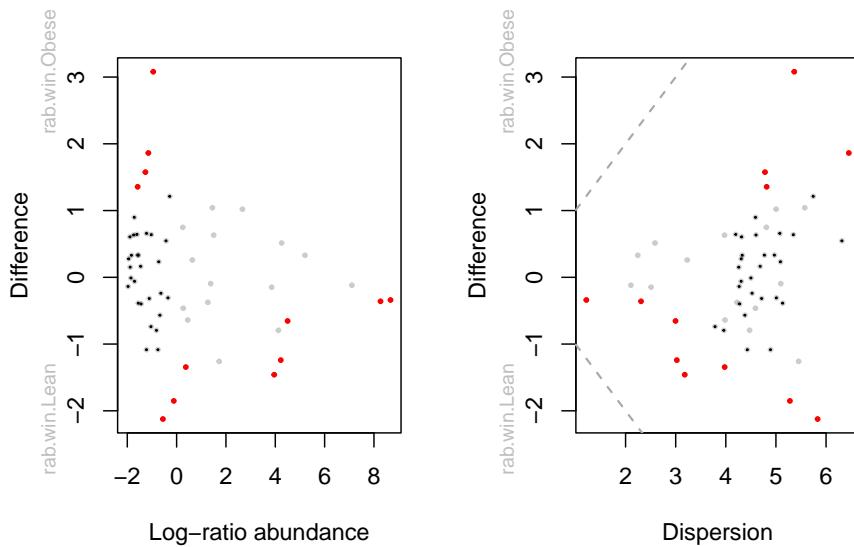
par(mfrow = c(1, 2))
aldex.plot(
  aldex_out,
  type = "MA",
  test = "welch",

```

```

xlab = "Log-ratio abundance",
ylab = "Difference",
cutoff = 0.05
)
aldex.plot(
  aldex_out,
  type = "MW",
  test = "welch",
  xlab = "Dispersion",
  ylab = "Difference",
  cutoff = 0.05
)

```



The evaluation as differential abundant in above plots is based on the corrected pvalue. According to the ALDEx2 developers, the safest approach is to identify those features where the 95% CI of the effect size does not cross 0. As we can see in below table, this is not the case for any of the identified genera (see overlap column, which indicates the proportion of overlap). Also, the authors recommend to focus on effect sizes and CIs rather than interpreting the pvalue. To keep the comparison simple, we will here use the pvalue as decision criterion. But please be aware that the effect size together with the CI is a better answer to the question we are typically interested in (see also this article).

```
rownames_to_column(aldex_out, "genus") %>%
  filter(wi.eBH <= 0.05) %>% # here we chose the wilcoxon output
  ← rather than tt
  select(genus, we.eBH, wi.eBH, effect, overlap) %>%
  kable()
```

genus	we.eBH	wi.eBH	effect	overlap
Alistipes	0.0009	0.0001	-0.3823	0.2979
Barnesiella	0.0442	0.0066	-0.3229	0.3489
Catenibacterium	0.0266	0.0330	0.2713	0.3718
Lactobacillus	0.0282	0.0183	0.2983	0.3537
Megasphaera	0.0000	0.0001	0.5249	0.2758
Oscillibacter	0.0004	0.0014	-0.3681	0.3291
Parabacteroides	0.0541	0.0133	-0.2832	0.3509
Phascolarctobacterium	0.0238	0.0077	-0.3491	0.3404
Unknown	0.0786	0.0439	-0.2474	0.3852

#### 11.1.4 ANCOM-BC

The analysis of composition of microbiomes with bias correction (ANCOM-BC) (Lin and Peddada, 2020) is a recently developed method for differential abundance testing. It is based on an earlier published approach (Mandal et al., 2015). The previous version of ANCOM was among the methods that produced the most consistent results and is probably a conservative approach (Nearing et al., 2022). However, the new ANCOM-BC method operates quite differently compared to the former ANCOM method.

As the only method, ANCOM-BC incorporates the so called *sampling fraction* into the model. The latter term could be empirically estimated by the ratio of the library size to the microbial load. According to the authors, variations in this sampling fraction would bias differential abundance analyses if ignored. Furthermore, this method provides p-values and confidence intervals for each taxon. It also controls the FDR and it is computationally simple to implement.

As we will see below, to obtain results, all that is needed is to pass a tse object to the `ancombc()` function. Below, we first specify a formula. In this formula, other covariates could potentially be included to adjust for confounding. We show this further below. Please check the function documentation to learn about the additional arguments that we specify below.

```
# perform the analysis
out <- ancombc(
  x = tse,
  formula = "pheno",
```

```

p_adj_method = "fdr",
prv_cut = 0, # no prev filtering necessary anymore
lib_cut = 0,
group = "pheno",
struc_zero = TRUE,
neg_lb = TRUE,
tol = 1e-5,
max_iter = 100,
conserve = TRUE,
alpha = 0.05,
global = TRUE # multi group comparison will be deactivated
    ↪ automatically
)
# store the results in res
res <- out$res

```

The object `out` contains all model output. Again, see the documentation of the function under **Value** for an explanation of all the output objects. Our question whether taxa are differentially abundant can be answered by looking at the `res` object, which now contains dataframes with the coefficients, standard errors, p-values and q-values. Conveniently, there is a dataframe `diff_abn`. Here, for each taxon it is indicated whether it is differentially abundant between the groups (again, keep in mind that the answer is not black-white). Below we show the first 6 entries of this dataframe:

```
kable(head(res$diff_abn))
```

	phenoObese
Acetanaerobacterium	TRUE
Acetivibrio	FALSE
Acidaminococcus	TRUE
Akkermansia	FALSE
Alistipes	TRUE
Allisonella	FALSE

### 11.1.5 MaAsLin2

Next, we will illustrate how to use MaAsLin2, which is the next generation of MaAsLin. As it is based on generalized linear models, it is flexible for different study designs and covariate structures. The official package tutorial can be found here.

```

# maaslin expects features as columns and samples as rows
# for both the asv/otu table as well as meta data
asv <- t(assay(tse))
meta_data <- data.frame(colData(tse))
# you can specify different GLMs/normalizations/transforms. We
# settings as in Nearing et al. (2021) here:
fit_data <- Maaslin2(
  asv,
  meta_data,
  output = "DAA example",
  transform = "AST",
  fixed_effects = "pheno",
  # random_effects = c(...), # you can also fit MLM by specifying
  # specifying a ref is especially important if you have more
  # than 2 levels
  reference = "pheno,Lean",
  normalization = "TSS",
  standardize = FALSE,
  min_prevalence = 0 # prev filterin already done
)

```

```

# which genera are identified as differentially abundant? (leave
# see all)
kable(head(filter(fit_data$results, qval <= 0.05)))

```

feature	metadata	value	coef	stderr	pval	name	qval	N
Megasphaera	pheno	Obese	0.0489	0.0093	0	phenoObese	0e+00	254
Barnesiella	pheno	Obese	-0.0297	0.0068	0	phenoObese	2e-04	254
Parabacteroides	pheno	Obese	-0.0219	0.0050	0	phenoObese	2e-04	254
Phascolarctobacterium	pheno	Obese	-0.0325	0.0072	0	phenoObese	2e-04	254
Alistipes	pheno	Obese	-0.0523	0.0123	0	phenoObese	3e-04	254
Desulfovibrio	pheno	Obese	-0.0134	0.0032	0	phenoObese	3e-04	254

```

# A folder will be created that is called like the above
# specified output.
# It contains also figures to visualize the difference between
# genera
# for the significant ones.

```

### 11.1.6 LinDA

Lastly, we cover linear models for differential abundance analysis of microbiome compositional data (Zhou et al. (2022)). This tool is very similar to ANCOMBC with few differences: 1) LinDA correct for the compositional bias differently using the mode of all regression coefficients. 2) The authors claim that it runs 100-1000x faster than ANCOMBC and 3) it support hierarchical models. The latter could be ignored as ANCOMBC will be supporting hierarchical models with the next release. Nevertheless, LinDA seems a promising tool that achieves the best power/fdr trade-off together with ANCOMBC according to the authors. The speed might make it the choice for bigger datasets or datasets with a very high number of features.

```

otu.tab <- as.data.frame(assay(tse))
meta <- as.data.frame(colData(tse)) %>% select(pheno)
res <- linda(
  otu.tab,
  meta,
  formula = ' ~ pheno',
  alpha = 0.05,
  prev.filter = 0,
  mean.abund.filter = 0)

## 0 features are filtered!
## The filtered data has 254 samples and 55 features will be tested!
## Imputation approach is used.
## Fit linear models ...
## Completed.

# to scan the table for genera where H0 could be rejected:
kable(head(filter(as.data.frame(res$output), phenoObese.reject)))

```

	phenoObese.baseMean	phenoObese.log2FoldChange	phenoObese.lfcSE	phenoObese.s
Acetanaerobacterium	918.5	-0.7591	0.1619	-4.1
Acidaminococcus	372.9	0.7394	0.2327	3.1
Akkermansia	827.6	-0.5110	0.2168	-2.1
Alistipes	23944.9	-1.7646	0.3127	-5.1
Asaccharobacter	621.0	-0.4913	0.1467	-3.1
Bacteroides	272640.7	-0.8874	0.2686	-3.1

### 11.1.7 Comparison of the methods

When we compare the methods in the context of a research question, we could look at e.g. at whether they agree based on the applied decision criterion (e.g. adjusted p value  $< 0.05$ ). That is what we illustrate here. First we will look at how

many taxa were identified by each method to begin with. In the next step we will look at the intersection of identified taxa. To achieve that, we first create a dataframe that summarises the decision criterion for each method and shows a score from 0 to 3 indicating how many methods agreed on a particular taxon.

```
summ <- full_join(
  rownames_to_column(aldex_out, "genus") %>%
    select(genus, aldex2 = wi.eBH),
  rownames_to_column(out$res$diff_abn, "genus") %>%
    select(genus, ancombc = phenoObese),
  by = "genus") %>%
  full_join(
    select(fit_data$results, genus = feature, maaslin2 = qval),
    by = "genus") %>%
  full_join(
    rownames_to_column(as.data.frame(res$output), "genus") %>%
      select(genus, LinDA = phenoObese.reject),
    by = "genus") %>%
  mutate(
    across(c(aldex2, maaslin2), ~ .x <= 0.05),
    # the following line would be necessary without prevalence
    # filtering
    # as some methods output NA
    #across(~genus, function(x) ifelse(is.na(x), FALSE, x)),
    score = rowSums(across(c(aldex2, ancombc, maaslin2, LinDA)))
  )

# This is how it looks like:
kable(head(summ))
```

genus	aldex2	ancombc	maaslin2	LinDA	score
Acetanaerobacterium	FALSE	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	3
Acetivibrio	FALSE	FALSE	FALSE	FALSE	0
Acidaminococcus	FALSE	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	3
Akkermansia	FALSE	FALSE	FALSE	TRUE	1
Alistipes	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	4
Allisonella	FALSE	FALSE	FALSE	FALSE	0

Now we can answer our questions:

```
# how many genera were identified by each method?
summarise(summ, across(where(is.logical), sum)) %>%
  kable()
```

aldex2	ancombc	maaslin2	LinDA
9	22	16	25

```
# which genera are identified by all methods?
filter(summ, score == 4) %>% kable()
```

genus	aldex2	ancombc	maaslin2	LinDA	score
Alistipes	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	4
Barnesiella	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	4
Catenibacterium	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	4
Lactobacillus	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	4
Megasphaera	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	4
Oscillibacter	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	4
Parabacteroides	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	4
Phascolarctobacterium	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	4

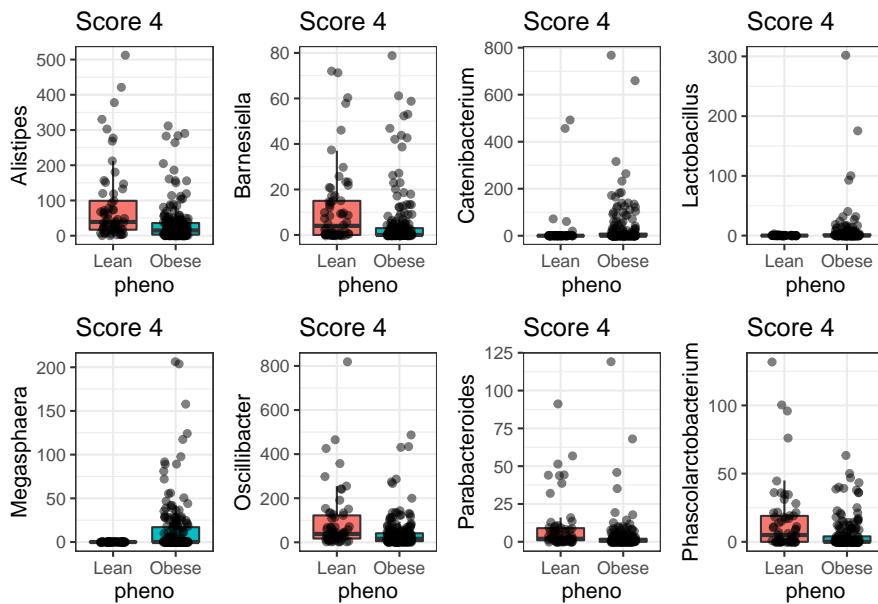
We see that each method identified at least 9 genera as differentially abundant. Eight of those that were identified by ALDEx2, were also identified by the other methods. We could plot the data for any method or for those taxa that were identified by all methods:

```
plot_data <- data.frame(t(assay(tse)))
plot_data$pheno <- colData(tse)$pheno
# create a plot for each genus where the score is indicated in
# the title
plots <- pmap(select(summ, genus, score), function(genus, score)
{
  ggplot(plot_data, aes_string("pheno", genus)) +
    geom_boxplot(aes(fill = pheno), outlier.shape = NA) +
    geom_jitter(width = 0.2, alpha = 0.5) +
    ggtitle(glue:::glue("Score {score}")) +
    theme_bw() +
    theme(legend.position = "none")
})

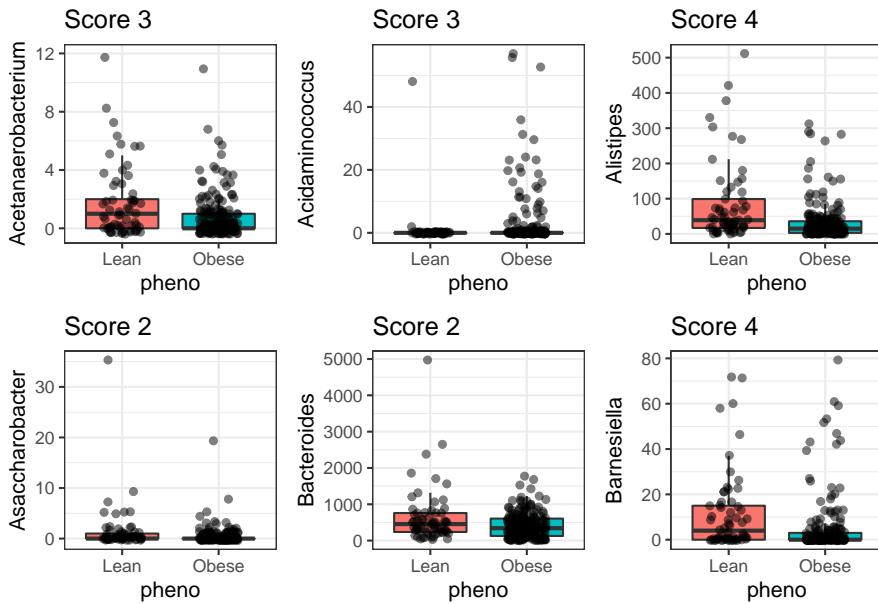
# now we can show only those genera that have at least score 3
# (or 2 or 1)
robust_plots <- plots[summ$score == 4]

# to display this nicely in the book we use patchwork here:
# (we show first 8)
robust_plots[[1]] +
  robust_plots[[2]] +
  robust_plots[[3]] +
  robust_plots[[4]] +
  robust_plots[[5]] +
  robust_plots[[6]] +
  robust_plots[[7]] +
```

```
robust_plots[[8]] +
plot_layout(nrow = 2)
```



```
# or if we have most trust in any specific method we can show
  ↵ genera that
# are differentially abundant according to that method and then
  ↵ look in the
# title how many methods also identified it (we only show first 6
  ↵ here):
ancombc_plots <- plots$summ$ancombc
ancombc_plots[[1]] +
  ancombc_plots[[2]] +
  ancombc_plots[[3]] +
  ancombc_plots[[4]] +
  ancombc_plots[[5]] +
  ancombc_plots[[6]]
```



### 11.1.8 Confounding variables

To perform causal inference, it is crucial that the method is able to include covariates in the model. This is not possible with e.g. the Wilcoxon test. Other methods such as both ANCOM methods, ALDEx2, LinDA, MaAsLin2 and others allow this. Below we show how to include a covariate in ANCOM-BC. It is very similar for all the methods that allow this. Since in this dataset there are no covariates, I first simulate a new variable and add it to the TSE object.

```
# to join new data to existing colData we need to put rownames as
# a column
colData(tse)$sample_id <- rownames(colData(tse))
# simulate a covariate that I will add to the colData.
df_sim <- tibble(
  sample_id = colData(tse)$sample_id,
  age = rnorm(n = length(colData(tse)$sample_id)))
#
# an easy way to join data is to use dplyr functions. The package
# tidySummarizedExperiment enables this functionality
tse <- full_join(tse, df_sim, by = "sample_id")
out_cov = ancombc(
  x = tse,
  formula = "pheno + age", # here we add age to the model
```

```

p_adj_method = "fdr",
prv_cut = 0, # we did that already
lib_cut = 0,
group = "pheno",
struc_zero = TRUE,
neg_lb = TRUE,
tol = 1e-5,
max_iter = 100,
conserve = TRUE,
alpha = 0.05,
global = TRUE
)
# now the model answers the question: holding age constant, are
# bacterial taxa differentially abundant? Or, if that is of
# interest,
# holding phenotype constant, is age associated with bacterial
# abundance?
# Again we only show the first 6 entries.
kable(head(out_cov$res$diff_abn))

```

	phenoObese	age
Acetanaerobacterium	TRUE	FALSE
Acetivibrio	FALSE	FALSE
Acidaminococcus	TRUE	FALSE
Akkermansia	FALSE	FALSE
Alistipes	TRUE	FALSE
Allisonella	FALSE	FALSE

In the next section of this book chapter we cover methods that can also take into account the phylogenetic information of bacterial taxa to perform group-wise associations.

## 11.2 Tree-based methods

### 11.2.1 Group-wise associations testing based on balances with fido

`TreeSummarizedExperiment` frequently includes a Phylogenetic tree along with associated data about the experiment (at `colData`), that holds covariates which can be used for analyzing group-wise associations.

Such an analysis could be performed with the function `pibble` from the `fido` package, that offers a Multinomial Logistic-Normal Linear Regression model; see vignette of package.

The following presents such an exemplary analysis based on the data of Sprockett et al. (2020) available through `microbiomeDataSets` package.

```
if (!require(fido)){
  # installing the fido package
  devtools::install_github("jsilve24/fido")
}
```

Loading the libraries and importing data:

```
library(fido)
library(mia)

library(microbiomeDataSets)
tse <- SprockettTHData()
```

We pick three covariates ("Sex", "Age\_Years", "Delivery\_Mode") during this analysis as an example, and beforehand we check for missing data:

```
cov_names <- c("Sex", "Age_Years", "Delivery_Mode")
na_counts <- apply(is.na(colData(tse)[,cov_names]), 2, sum)
na_summary<-as.data.frame(na_counts, row.names=cov_names)
```

We drop samples with na values at the covariates (features) under analysis:

```
tse <- tse[ , !is.na(colData(tse)$Delivery_Mode) ]
tse <- tse[ , !is.na(colData(tse)$Age_Years) ]
```

We agglomerate the data at a Phylum rank. Note: Large assay data (along with the covariates/features data) could prevent the analysis later, since the computation will construct matrices that would not always fit memory.

```
tse_phylum <- agglomerateByRank(tse, "Phylum")
```

We extract the counts assay and feature data to build the model matrix having an extra row of ones presenting the intercept for the regression task later:

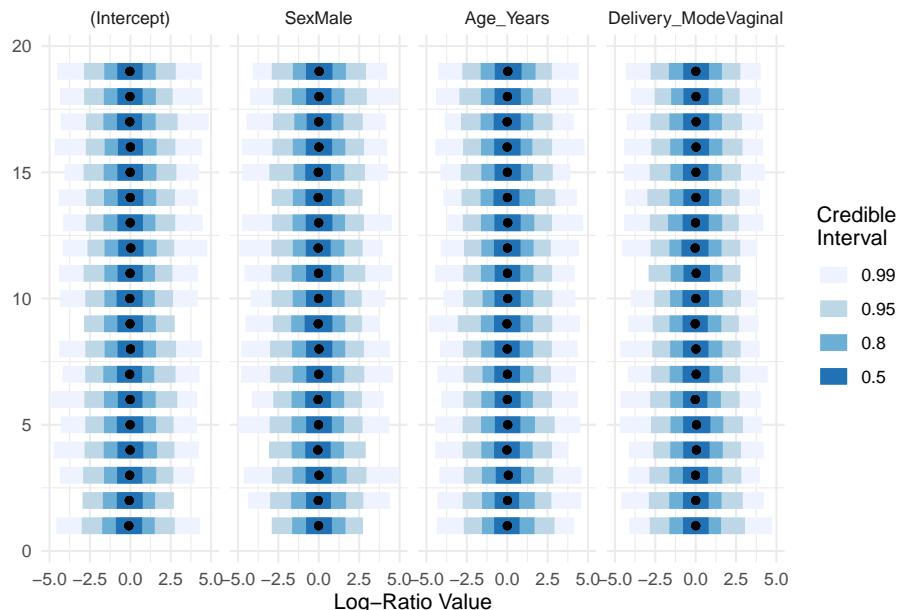
```
Y <- assays(tse_phylum)$counts
# design matrix
# taking 3 covariates
sample_data<-as.data.frame(colData(tse_phylum)[,cov_names])
X <-
  t(model.matrix(~Sex+Age_Years+Delivery_Mode, data=sample_data))
```

Building the parameters for the `pibble` call to build the model; see more at vignette:

```
n_taxa <- nrow(Y)
upsilon <- n_taxa+3
Omega <- diag(n_taxa)
G <- cbind(diag(n_taxa-1), -1)
Xi <- (upsilon-n_taxa)*G%*%Omega%*%t(G)
Theta <- matrix(0, n_taxa-1, nrow(X))
Gamma <- diag(nrow(X))
```

Automatically initializing the priors and visualizing their distributions:

```
priors <- pibble(NULL, X, uppsilon, Theta, Gamma, Xi)
names_covariates(priors) <- rownames(X)
plot(priors, pars="Lambda") + ggplot2::xlim(c(-5, 5))
```



Estimating the posterior by including the data at `Y`. Note: Some computational failures could occur (see discussion) the arguments `multDirichletBoot` `calcGradHess` could be passed in such case.

```
priors$Y <- Y
posterior <- refit(priors, optim_method="adam",
                     multDirichletBoot=0.5) # ,, calcGradHess=FALSE
```

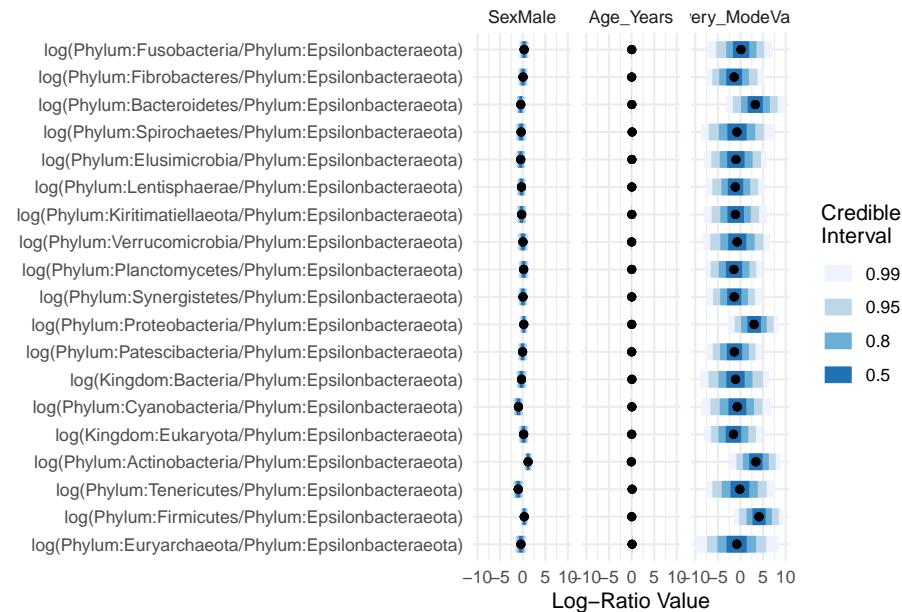
Printing a summary about the posterior predictive distribution:

```
ppc_summary(posterior)
```

```
## Proportions of Observations within 95% Credible Interval: 0.998
```

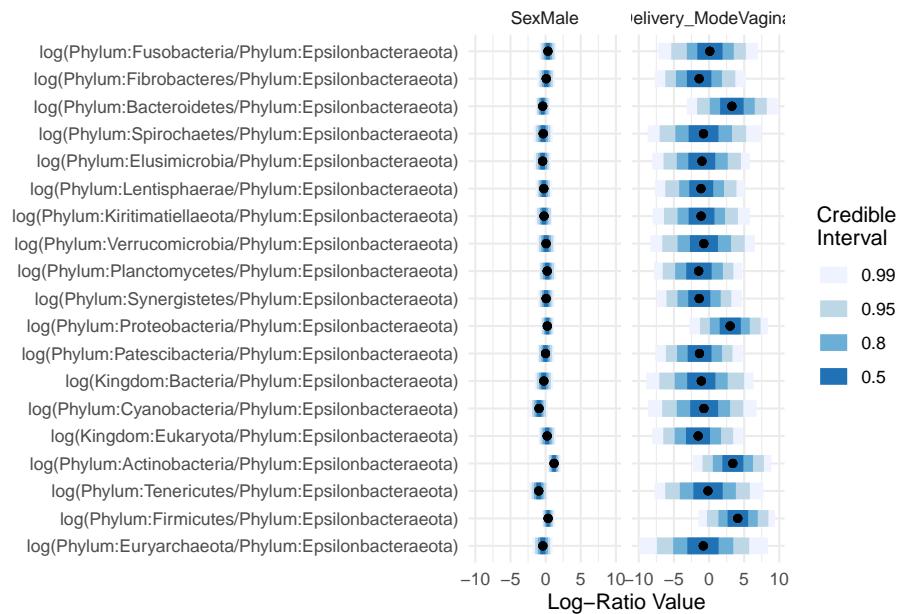
Plotting the summary of the posterior distributions of the regression parameters:

```
names_categories(posterior) <- rownames(Y)
plot(posterior, par="Lambda", focus.cov=rownames(X)[2:4])
```



Seemingly the covariate “Age\_Years” does not have effect on the model as “Delivery\_Mode” would, and “Sex” to some extent. Let’s take a closer look at the two latter ones:

```
plot(posterior, par="Lambda", focus.cov = rownames(X)[c(2,4)])
```



## Session Info

View session info

```
R version 4.2.1 (2022-06-23)
Platform: x86_64-pc-linux-gnu (64-bit)
Running under: Ubuntu 20.04.4 LTS

Matrix products: default
BLAS:    /usr/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/openblas-pthread/libblas.so.3
LAPACK:  /usr/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/openblas-pthread/liblapack.so.3

locale:
[1] LC_CTYPE=en_US.UTF-8        LC_NUMERIC=C
[3] LC_TIME=en_US.UTF-8         LC_COLLATE=en_US.UTF-8
[5] LC_MONETARY=en_US.UTF-8     LC_MESSAGES=en_US.UTF-8
[7] LC_PAPER=en_US.UTF-8        LC_NAME=C
[9] LC_ADDRESS=C                LC_TELEPHONE=C
[11] LC_MEASUREMENT=en_US.UTF-8 LC_IDENTIFICATION=C

attached base packages:
[1] stats4   stats     graphics  grDevices utils     datasets  methods 
[8] base
```

```

other attached packages:
[1] fido_1.0.3                  ANCOMBC_1.99.1
[3]forcats_0.5.2                stringr_1.4.1
[5] dplyr_1.0.10                 purrr_0.3.4
[7] readr_2.1.3                  tidyverse_1.3.2
[9] tibble_3.1.8                 ggplot2_3.3.6
[11] tidyverse_1.3.2               knitr_1.40
[13] MicrobiomeStat_1.1          Maaslin2_1.10.0
[15] ALDEEx2_1.28.1              zCompositions_1.4.0-1
[17] truncnorm_1.0-8              NADA_1.6-1.1
[19] survival_3.4-0              MASS_7.3-58.1
[21] tidySummarizedExperiment_1.6.1 patchwork_1.1.2
[23] mia_1.5.16                  MultiAssayExperiment_1.22.0
[25] TreeSummarizedExperiment_2.1.4 Biostrings_2.64.1
[27] XVector_0.36.0              SingleCellExperiment_1.18.1
[29] SummarizedExperiment_1.26.1   Biobase_2.56.0
[31] GenomicRanges_1.48.0         GenomeInfoDb_1.32.4
[33] IRanges_2.30.1              S4Vectors_0.34.0
[35] BiocGenerics_0.42.0         MatrixGenerics_1.8.1
[37] matrixStats_0.62.0-9003     BiocStyle_2.24.0
[39] rebook_1.6.0

loaded via a namespace (and not attached):
[1] coda_0.19-4                  bit64_4.0.5
[3] irlba_2.3.5.1                DelayedArray_0.22.0
[5] data.table_1.14.2             rpart_4.1.16
[7] doParallel_1.0.17             RCurl_1.98-1.9
[9] generics_0.1.3                ScaledMatrix_1.4.1
[11] microbiome_1.18.0            timeSeries_4021.104
[13] RSQLite_2.2.18                proxy_0.4-27
[15] bit_4.0.4                   tzdb_0.3.0
[17] xml2_1.3.3                  lubridate_1.8.0
[19] assertthat_0.2.1              DirichletMultinomial_1.38.0
[21] viridis_0.6.2                gargle_1.2.1
[23] xfun_0.33                   fBasics_4021.92
[25] ggdist_3.2.0                hms_1.1.2
[27] evaluate_0.16                DEoptimR_1.0-11
[29] fansi_1.0.3                 dbplyr_2.2.1
[31] readxl_1.4.1                igraph_1.3.5
[33] DBI_1.1.3                   htmlwidgets_1.5.4
[35] tensorA_0.36.2              googledrive_2.0.0
[37] hash_2.2.6.2                ellipsis_0.3.2
[39] energy_1.7-10                backports_1.4.1
[41] bookdown_0.29                permute_0.9-7
[43] deldir_1.0-6                sparseMatrixStats_1.8.0

```

```
[45] vctrs_0.4.2
[47] tidybayes_3.0.2
[49] withr_2.5.0
[51] checkmate_2.1.0
[53] treeio_1.20.2
[55] cluster_2.1.4
[57] ape_5.6-2
[59] lazyeval_0.2.2
[61] labeling_0.4.2
[63] nlme_3.1-159
[65] nnet_7.3-18
[67] spatial_7.3-15
[69] filelock_1.0.2
[71] modelr_0.1.9
[73] distributional_0.3.1
[75] rngtools_1.5.2
[77] Matrix_1.5-1
[79] Rhdf5lib_1.18.2
[81] base64enc_0.1-3
[83] beeswarm_0.4.0
[85] png_0.1-7
[87] stabledist_0.7-1
[89] bitops_1.0-7
[91] blob_1.2.3
[93] doRNG_1.8.2
[95] jpeg_0.1-9
[97] beachmat_2.12.0
[99] memoise_2.0.1
[101] plyr_1.8.7
[103] compiler_4.2.1
[105] clue_0.3-61
[107] cli_3.4.1
[109] lmerTest_3.1-3
[111] htmlTable_2.4.1
[113] mgcv_1.8-40
[115] stringi_1.7.8
[117] yaml_2.3.5
[119] BiocSingular_1.12.0
[121] ggrepel_0.9.1
[123] tools_4.2.1
[125] parallel_4.2.1
[127] logging_0.10-108
[129] foreach_1.5.2
[131] optparse_1.7.3
[133] gld_2.6.5
[135] farver_2.1.1
[45] abind_1.4-5
[47] cachem_1.0.6
[49] robustbase_0.95-0
[51] vegan_2.6-2
[53] getopt_1.20.3
[55] gsl_2.1-7.1
[57] dir.expiry_1.4.0
[59] crayon_1.5.2
[61] pkgconfig_2.0.3
[63] viper_0.4.5
[65] rlang_1.0.6
[67] lifecycle_1.0.2
[69] phyloseq_1.40.0
[71] rsvd_1.0.5
[73] cellranger_1.1.0
[75] graph_1.74.0
[77] lpsymphony_1.24.0
[79] boot_1.3-28
[81] reprex_2.0.2
[83] googlesheets4_1.0.1
[85] viridisLite_0.4.1
[87] rootSolve_1.8.2.3
[89] rhdf5filters_1.8.0
[91] DelayedMatrixStats_1.18.1
[93] decontam_1.16.0
[95] DECIPHER_2.24.0
[97] scales_1.2.1
[99] magrittr_2.0.3
[101] zlibbioc_1.42.0
[103] RColorBrewer_1.1-3
[105] lme4_1.1-30
[107] ade4_1.7-19
[109] pbapply_1.5-0
[111] Formula_1.2-4
[113] tidyselect_1.1.2
[115] highr_0.9
[117] svUnit_1.0.6
[119] latticeExtra_0.6-30
[121] grid_4.2.1
[123] lmom_2.9
[125] rstudioapi_0.14
[127] foreign_0.8-83
[129] statip_0.2.3
[131] gridExtra_2.3
[133] posterior_1.3.1
[135] Rtsne_0.16
```

```
[137] stable_1.1.6          RcppZiggurat_0.1.6
[139] digest_0.6.29         BiocManager_1.30.18
[141] Rcpp_1.0.9            broom_1.0.1
[143] scuttle_1.6.3         httr_1.4.4
[145] Rdpack_2.4             colorspace_2.0-3
[147] rvest_1.0.3           XML_3.99-0.11
[149] fs_1.5.2              modeest_2.4.0
[151] splines_4.2.1          yulab.utils_0.0.5
[153] rmutil_1.1.9           statmod_1.4.37
[155] expm_0.999-6           tidytree_0.4.1
[157] scater_1.24.0          Exact_3.2
[159] multtest_2.52.0         plotly_4.10.0
[161] jsonlite_1.8.2          nloptr_2.0.3
[163] CodeDepends_0.6.5        timeDate_4021.106
[165] Rfast_2.0.6             R6_2.5.1
[167] Hmisc_4.7-1             pillar_1.8.1
[169] htmltools_0.5.3          glue_1.6.2
[171] fastmap_1.1.0            minqa_1.2.4
[173] BiocParallel_1.30.3       BiocNeighbors_1.14.0
[175] class_7.3-20            codetools_0.2-18
[177] pcaPP_2.0-2             mvtnorm_1.1-3
[179] utf8_1.2.2              lattice_0.20-45
[181] arrayhelpers_1.1-0        numDeriv_2016.8-1.1
[183] ggbeeswarm_0.6.0          DescTools_0.99.46
[185] interp_1.1-3             bigglm_0.9-2.1
[187] rmarkdown_2.16            biomformat_1.24.0
[189] munsell_0.5.0            e1071_1.7-11
[191] rhdf5_2.40.0             GenomeInfoDbData_1.2.8
[193] iterators_1.0.14          haven_2.5.1
[195] reshape2_1.4.4            gtable_0.3.1
[197] rbibutils_2.2.9
```



# Chapter 12

## Machine learning

Machine learning (ML) is a part of artificial intelligence. There are multiple definitions, but “machine” refers to computation and “learning” to improving performance based on the data by finding patterns from it. Machine learning includes wide variety of methods from simple statistical methods to more complex methods such as neural-networks.

Machine learning can be divided into supervised and unsupervised machine learning. Supervised ML is used to predict outcome based on the data. Unsupervised ML is used, for example, to reduce dimensionality (e.g. PCA) and to find clusters from the data (e.g., k-means clustering).

### 12.1 Supervised machine learning

“Supervised” means that the training data is introduced before. The training data contains labels (e.g., patient status), and the model is fitted based on the training data. After fitting, the model is utilized to predict labels of data whose labels are not known.

```
library(mia)

# Load experimental data
data(peerj13075)
(tse <- peerj13075)

## class: TreeSummarizedExperiment
## dim: 674 58
## metadata(0):
```

```

## assays(1): counts
## rownames(674): OTU1 OTU2 ... OTU2567 OTU2569
## rowData names(6): kingdom phylum ... family genus
## colnames(58): ID1 ID2 ... ID57 ID58
## colData names(5): Sample Geographical_location Gender Age Diet
## reducedDimNames(0):
## mainExpName: NULL
## altExpNames(0):
## rowLinks: NULL
## rowTree: NULL
## colLinks: NULL
## colTree: NULL

```

Let's first preprocess the data.

```

# Agglomerate data
tse <- agglomerateByRank(tse, rank = "order")

# Apply CLR transform
tse <- transformSamples(tse, method = "relabundance", pseudocount
    ← = 1)
tse <- transformSamples(tse, assay_name = "relabundance", method
    ← = "clr")

# Get assay
assay <- assay(tse, "clr")
# Transpose assay
assay <- t(assay)

# Convert into data.frame
df <- as.data.frame(assay)

# Add labels to assay
labels <- colData(tse)$Diet
labels <- as.factor(labels)
df$diet <- labels

df[5, 5]

## [1] -0.4612

```

In the example below, we use mikropml package. We try to predict the diet type based on the data.

```

if( !require("mikropml") ){
  install.packages("mikropml")
  library(mikropml)
}

# Run random forest
results <- run_ml(df, "rf", outcome_colname = 'diet',
                    kfold = 2, cv_times = 5, training_frac = 0.8)

# Print result
confusionMatrix(data =
  ~ results$trained_model$finalModel$predicted,
  reference = results$trained_model$finalModel$y)

## Confusion Matrix and Statistics
##
##           Reference
## Prediction Mixed Veg
##       Mixed     10    9
##       Veg       13   15
##
##           Accuracy : 0.532
##                 95% CI : (0.381, 0.679)
##       No Information Rate : 0.511
##       P-Value [Acc > NIR] : 0.443
##
##           Kappa : 0.06
##
##   Mcnemar's Test P-Value : 0.522
##
##           Sensitivity : 0.435
##           Specificity : 0.625
##       Pos Pred Value : 0.526
##       Neg Pred Value : 0.536
##           Prevalence : 0.489
##       Detection Rate : 0.213
##   Detection Prevalence : 0.404
##       Balanced Accuracy : 0.530
##
##       'Positive' Class : Mixed
##

```

mikropml offers easier interface to caret package. However, we can also use it directly.

Let's use xgboost model which is another commonly used algorithm in bioinformatics.

```
# Set seed for reproducibility
set.seed(6358)

# Specify train control
train_control <- trainControl(method = "cv", number = 5,
                                classProbs = TRUE,
                                savePredictions = "final",
                                allowParallel = TRUE)

# Specify hyperparameter tuning grid
tune_grid <- expand.grid(nrounds = c(50, 100, 200),
                         max_depth = c(6, 8, 10),
                         colsample_bytree = c(0.6, 0.8, 1),
                         eta = c(0.1, 0.3),
                         gamma = 0,
                         min_child_weight = c(3, 4, 5),
                         subsample = c(0.6, 0.8)
                         )

# Train the model, use LOOCV to evaluate performance
model <- train(x = assay,
                y = labels,
                method = "xgbTree",
                objective = "binary:logistic",
                trControl = train_control,
                tuneGrid = tune_grid,
                metric = "AUC",
                verbosity = 0
               )
```

Let's create ROC curve which is a commonly used method in binary classification.

```
if( !require(plotROC) ){
  install.packages("plotROC")
  library(plotROC)
}
# Convert diets forms into binary
model$pred$pred_binary <- ifelse(model$pred$pred == "Mixed", 1,
                                   0)
model$pred$obs_binary <- ifelse(model$pred$obs == "Mixed", 1, 0)
```

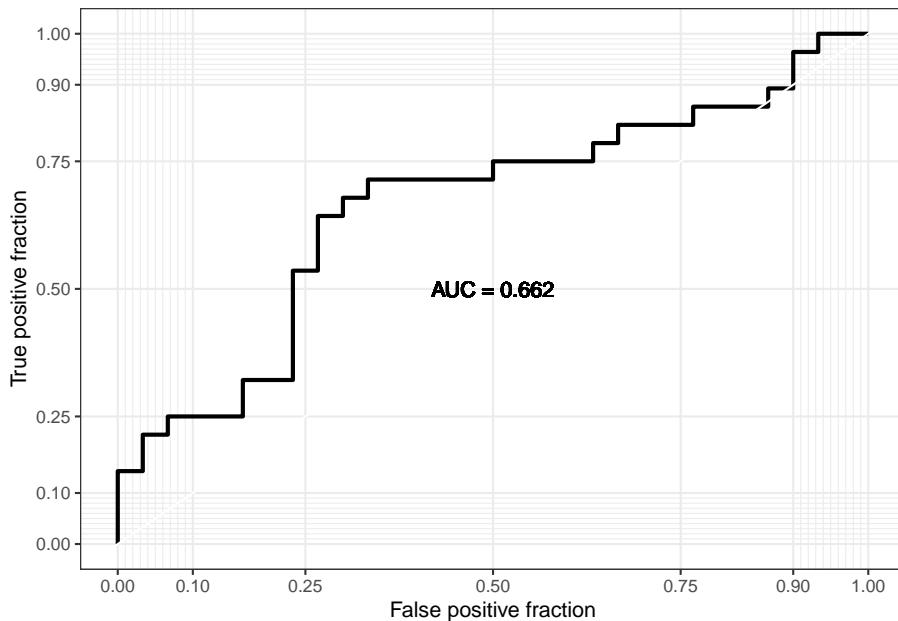
```

# Predictions
predictions <- model$pred

# Plot roc plot
plot_roc <- ggplot(predictions, aes_string(m = "Mixed", d =
  "obs_binary")) +
  geom_roc(labels = FALSE, n.cuts = 0)

# Create additional aesthetics and calculate AUC
plot <- plot_roc +
  style_roc() +
  geom_text(aes(0.5, 0.5, label = paste0("AUC = ",
    round(calc_auc(plot_roc)$AUC, 3) ) ) +
  theme(legend.position="none")
plot

```



## 12.2 Unsupervised machine learning

“Unsupervised” means that the labels (e.g., patient status is not known), and patterns are learned based only the abundance table, for instance. Unsupervised ML is also known as a data mining where patterns are extracted from big datasets.

For unsupervised machine learning, please refer to chapters that are listed below:

- 10
- 8

## Session Info

View session info

```
R version 4.2.1 (2022-06-23)
Platform: x86_64-pc-linux-gnu (64-bit)
Running under: Ubuntu 20.04.4 LTS

Matrix products: default
BLAS:    /usr/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/openblas-pthread/libblas.so.3
LAPACK:  /usr/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/openblas-pthread/liblapack.so.3

locale:
[1] LC_CTYPE=en_US.UTF-8        LC_NUMERIC=C
[3] LC_TIME=en_US.UTF-8        LC_COLLATE=en_US.UTF-8
[5] LC_MONETARY=en_US.UTF-8     LC_MESSAGES=en_US.UTF-8
[7] LC_PAPER=en_US.UTF-8       LC_NAME=C
[9] LC_ADDRESS=C                LC_TELEPHONE=C
[11] LC_MEASUREMENT=en_US.UTF-8 LC_IDENTIFICATION=C

attached base packages:
[1] stats4      stats       graphics   grDevices  utils      datasets   methods
[8] base

other attached packages:
[1] plotROC_2.3.0           caret_6.0-93
[3] lattice_0.20-45          ggplot2_3.3.6
[5] mikropml_1.3.0           mia_1.5.16
[7] MultiAssayExperiment_1.22.0 TreeSummarizedExperiment_2.1.4
[9] Biostrings_2.64.1         XVector_0.36.0
[11] SingleCellExperiment_1.18.1 SummarizedExperiment_1.26.1
[13] Biobase_2.56.0            GenomicRanges_1.48.0
[15] GenomeInfoDb_1.32.4       IRanges_2.30.1
[17] S4Vectors_0.34.0          BiocGenerics_0.42.0
[19] MatrixGenerics_1.8.1      matrixStats_0.62.0-9003
[21] BiocStyle_2.24.0           rebook_1.6.0

loaded via a namespace (and not attached):
[1] plyr_1.8.7                 lazyeval_0.2.2
```

```
[3] splines_4.2.1           BiocParallel_1.30.3
[5] listenv_0.8.0          scater_1.24.0
[7] digest_0.6.29          foreach_1.5.2
[9] yulab.utils_0.0.5      htmltools_0.5.3
[11] viridis_0.6.2          fansi_1.0.3
[13] magrittr_2.0.3          memoise_2.0.1
[15] MLmetrics_1.1.1        ScaledMatrix_1.4.1
[17] cluster_2.1.4          ROCR_1.0-11
[19] DECIPHER_2.24.0        recipes_1.0.1
[21] globals_0.16.1         gower_1.0.0
[23] hardhat_1.2.0          colorspace_2.0-3
[25] blob_1.2.3             ggrepel_0.9.1
[27] xfun_0.33              dplyr_1.0.10
[29] crayon_1.5.2           RCurl_1.98-1.9
[31] jsonlite_1.8.2          graph_1.74.0
[33] survival_3.4-0          iterators_1.0.14
[35] ape_5.6-2               glue_1.6.2
[37] gtable_0.3.1            ipred_0.9-13
[39] zlibbioc_1.42.0         DelayedArray_0.22.0
[41] kernlab_0.9-31          BiocSingular_1.12.0
[43] shape_1.4.6              future.apply_1.9.1
[45] scales_1.2.1            DBI_1.1.3
[47] Rcpp_1.0.9               viridisLite_0.4.1
[49] decontam_1.16.0          tidytree_0.4.1
[51] proxy_0.4-27            bit_4.0.4
[53] rsvd_1.0.5              lava_1.6.10
[55] prodlim_2019.11.13       glmnet_4.1-4
[57] dir.expiry_1.4.0          ellipsis_0.3.2
[59] farver_2.1.1             pkgconfig_2.0.3
[61] XML_3.99-0.11            scuttle_1.6.3
[63] nnet_7.3-18              CodeDepends_0.6.5
[65] utf8_1.2.2               labeling_0.4.2
[67] tidyselect_1.1.2          rlang_1.0.6
[69] reshape2_1.4.4            munsell_0.5.0
[71] tools_4.2.1              cachem_1.0.6
[73] xgboost_1.6.0.1           cli_3.4.1
[75] DirichletMultinomial_1.38.0 generics_0.1.3
[77] RSQLite_2.2.18            evaluate_0.16
[79] stringr_1.4.1             fastmap_1.1.0
[81] yaml_2.3.5                ModelMetrics_1.2.2.2
[83] knitr_1.40                 bit64_4.0.5
[85] randomForest_4.7-1.1       purrr_0.3.4
[87] future_1.28.0              nlme_3.1-159
[89] sparseMatrixStats_1.8.0     compiler_4.2.1
[91] beeswarm_0.4.0             filelock_1.0.2
[93] e1071_1.7-11              treeio_1.20.2
```

```
[95] tibble_3.1.8
[97] highr_0.9
[99] vegan_2.6-2
[101] vctrs_0.4.2
[103] lifecycle_1.0.2
[105] BiocNeighbors_1.14.0
[107] bitops_1.0-7
[109] R6_2.5.1
[111] gridExtra_2.3
[113] parallelly_1.32.1
[115] MASS_7.3-58.1
[117] withr_2.5.0
[119] mgcv_1.8-40
[121] grid_4.2.1
[123] beachmat_2.12.0
[125] tidyR_1.2.1
[127] rmarkdown_2.16
[129] pROC_1.18.0
[131] ggbeeswarm_0.6.0

stringi_1.7.8
Matrix_1.5-1
permute_0.9-7
pillar_1.8.1
BiocManager_1.30.18
data.table_1.14.2
irlba_2.3.5.1
bookdown_0.29
vipor_0.4.5
codetools_0.2-18
assertthat_0.2.1
GenomeInfoDbData_1.2.8
parallel_4.2.1
rpart_4.1.16
timeDate_4021.106
class_7.3-20
DelayedMatrixStats_1.18.1
lubridate_1.8.0
```

## Chapter 13

# Multi-assay analyses

```
library(mia)
```

Multi-omics means that we integrate data from multiple sources. For example, we can integrate microbial abundances in the gut with biomolecular profiling data from blood samples. This kind of integrative multi-omic approaches can support the analysis of microbiome dysbiosis and facilitate the discovery of novel biomarkers for health and disease.

With cross-correlation analysis, we can analyze how strongly and how differently variables are associated between each other. For instance, we can analyze if higher presence of a specific taxon equals to higher levels of a biomolecule.

The data containers that the *miaverse* utilizes are scalable and they can contain different types of data in a same container. Because of that, the *miaverse* is well-suited for multi-assay microbiome data which incorporates different types of complementary data sources in a single reproducible workflow.

Another experiment can be stored in altExp slot of SE data container or both experiments can be stored side-by-side in MAE data container.

Different experiments are first imported into SE or TreeSE data container similarly to the case when only one experiment is present. After that different experiments are combined into the same data container. Result is one TreeSE object with alternative experiment in altExp slot, or MAE object with multiple experiment in its experiment slot.

As an example data, we use data from following publication: Hintikka L *et al.* (2021) Xylo-oligosaccharides in prevention of hepatic steatosis and adipose tissue inflammation: associating taxonomic and metabolomic patterns in fecal microbiotas with biclustering.

In this article, mice were fed with high-fat and low-fat diets with or without prebiotics. The purpose of this was to study if prebiotics would reduce the negative impacts of high-fat diet.

This example data can be loaded from `microbiomeDataSets`. The data is already in MAE format. It includes three different experiments: microbial abundance data, metabolite concentrations, and data about different biomarkers. Help for importing data into SE object you can find from here.

```
# Load the data
mae <- microbiomeDataSets::HintikkaXOData()

mae

## A MultiAssayExperiment object of 3 listed
## experiments with user-defined names and respective classes.
## Containing an ExperimentList class object of length 3:
## [1] microbiota: SummarizedExperiment with 12706 rows and 40 columns
## [2] metabolites: SummarizedExperiment with 38 rows and 40 columns
## [3] biomarkers: SummarizedExperiment with 39 rows and 40 columns
## Functionality:
## experiments() - obtain the ExperimentList instance
## colData() - the primary/phenotype DataFrame
## sampleMap() - the sample coordination DataFrame
## `$`, `[,` `[[` - extract colData columns, subset, or experiment
## *Format() - convert into a long or wide DataFrame
## assays() - convert ExperimentList to a SimpleList of matrices
## exportClass() - save data to flat files

if(!require(stringr)){
  install.packages("stringr")
  library(stringr)
}
# Drop off those bacteria that do not include information in
# Phylum or lower levels
mae[[1]] <- mae[[1]][!is.na(rowData(mae[[1]])$Phylum), ]
# Clean taxonomy data, so that names do not include additional
# characters
rowData(mae[[1]]) <- DataFrame(apply(rowData(mae[[1]]), 2,
                                         str_remove, pattern =
                                         ".[0-9]"))
# Microbiome data
mae[[1]]

## class: SummarizedExperiment
```

```

## dim: 12613 40
## metadata(0):
## assays(1): counts
## rownames(12613): GAYR01026362.62.2014 CVJT01000011.50.2173 ...
##   JRJTB:03787:02429 JRJTB:03787:02478
## rowData names(7): Phylum Class ... Species OTU
## colnames(40): C1 C2 ... C39 C40
## colData names(0):

# Metabolite data
mae[[2]]


## class: SummarizedExperiment
## dim: 38 40
## metadata(0):
## assays(1): nmr
## rownames(38): Butyrate Acetate ... Malonate 1,3-dihydroxyacetone
## rowData names(0):
## colnames(40): C1 C2 ... C39 C40
## colData names(0):


# Biomarker data
mae[[3]]


## class: SummarizedExperiment
## dim: 39 40
## metadata(0):
## assays(1): signals
## rownames(39): Triglycerides_liver CLSs_epi ... NPY_serum Glycogen_liver
## rowData names(0):
## colnames(40): C1 C2 ... C39 C40
## colData names(0):

```

## 13.1 Cross-correlation Analysis

Next we can do the cross-correlation analysis. Here we analyse if individual bacteria genera correlates with concentrations of individual metabolites. This helps as to answer the question: “If this bacteria is present, is this metabolite’s concentration then low or high”?

```

# Agglomerate microbiome data at family level
mae[[1]] <- agglomerateByPrevalence(mae[[1]], rank = "Family")
# Does log10 transform for microbiome data
mae[[1]] <- transformSamples(mae[[1]], method = "log10",
                                pseudocount = 1)

# Give unique names so that we do not have problems when we are
# creating a plot
rownames(mae[[1]]) <- getTaxonomyLabels(mae[[1]])

# Cross correlates data sets
correlations <- testExperimentCrossCorrelation(mae,
                                                 experiment1 = 1,
                                                 experiment2 = 2,
                                                 assay_name1 =
                                                 "log10",
                                                 assay_name2 =
                                                 "nmr",
                                                 method =
                                                 "spearman",
                                                 p_adj_threshold =
                                                 NULL,
                                                 cor_threshold =
                                                 NULL,
# Remove when mia
# is fixed
                                                 mode = "matrix",
                                                 sort = TRUE,
                                                 show_warnings =
                                                 FALSE)

```

Creates the heatmap

```

if( !require("ComplexHeatmap") ){
  BiocManager::install("ComplexHeatmap")
  library("ComplexHeatmap")
}

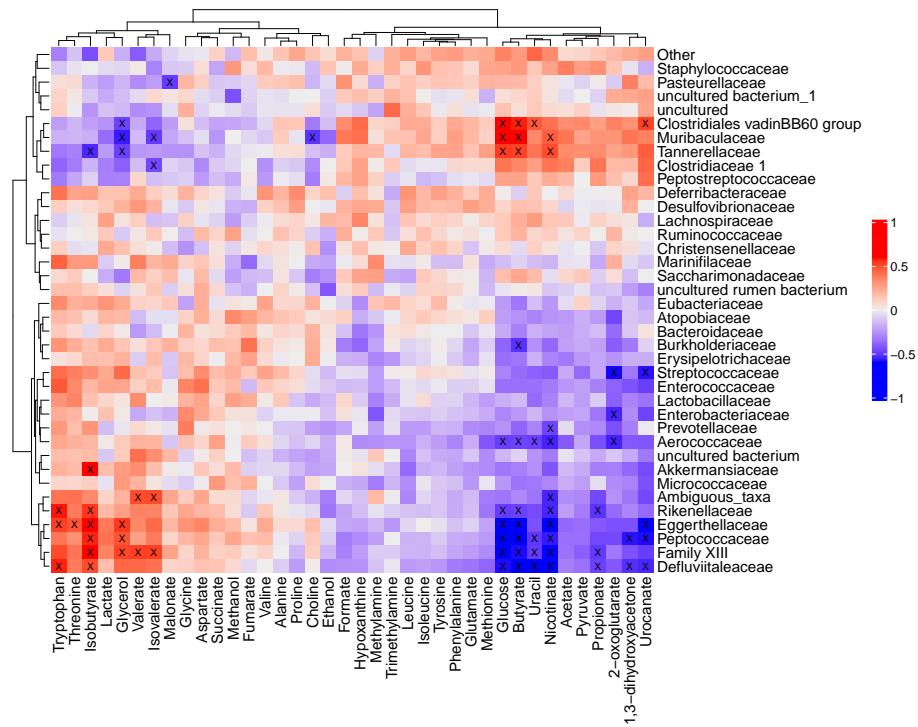
# Create a heatmap and store it
plot <- Heatmap(correlations$cor,
                  # Print values to cells
                  cell_fun = function(j, i, x, y, width, height,
                                      fill) {
                    # If the p-value is under threshold
                    if( !is.na(correlations$p_adj[i, j]) &
                      correlations$p_adj[i, j] < 0.05 ){

```

```

# Print "X"
grid.text(sprintf("%s", "X"), x, y, gp =
  gpar(fontsize = 8, col = "black"))
}
},
heatmap_legend_param = list(title = "",
  legend_height = unit(5, "cm"))
)
plot

```



## 13.2 Multi-Omics Factor Analysis

Multi-Omics Factor Analysis (Argelaguet, 2018) (MOFA) is an unsupervised method for integrating multi-omic data sets in a downstream analysis. It could be seen as a generalization of principal component analysis. Yet, with the ability to infer a latent (low-dimensional) representation, shared among the multiple (-omics) data sets in hand.

We use the R MOFA2 package for the analysis, and install the corresponding dependencies.

```

if(!require(MOFA2)){
  BiocManager::install("MOFA2")
}

# For inter-operability between Python and R, and setting Python
# dependencies,
# reticulate package is needed
if(!require(reticulate)){
  install.packages("reticulate")
}

reticulate::install_miniconda(force = TRUE)

## [1] "/github/home/.local/share/r-miniconda"

reticulate::use_miniconda(condaenv = "env1", required = FALSE)
reticulate::py_install(packages = c("mofapy2"), pip = TRUE)

```

The `mae` object could be used straight to create the MOFA model. Yet, we transform our assays since the model assumes normality per default. Other distributions that can be used, include Poisson or Bernoulli.

```

library(MOFA2)
# For simplicity, classify all high-fat diets as high-fat, and
# all the low-fat
# diets as low-fat diets
colData(mae)$Diet <- ifelse(colData(mae)$Diet == "High-fat" |
                           colData(mae)$Diet == "High-fat +
                           # XOS",
                           "High-fat", "Low-fat")

# Removing duplicates at the microbiome data
# which are also in form e.g. "Ambiguous" and "uncultured" taxa
mae[[1]] <- mae[[1]][!duplicated(rownames(assay(mae[[1]]))), ]

# Transforming microbiome data with rclr
mae[[1]] <- transformCounts(mae[[1]], method = "relabundance")
mae[[1]] <- transformCounts(mae[[1]], assay_name =
                           "relabundance", method = "rclr")

# Transforming metabolomic data with log10
mae[[2]] <- transformSamples(mae[[2]], assay_name = "nmr", method
                           = "log10")

```

```

# Transforming biomarker data with z-transform
mae[[3]] <- transformFeatures(mae[[3]], assay_name = "signals",
  ↵ method = "z", pseudocount = 1)

# Removing assays no longer needed
assay(mae[[1]], "counts") <- NULL
assay(mae[[1]], "log10") <- NULL
assay(mae[[2]], "nmr") <- NULL
assay(mae[[3]], "signals") <- NULL

# Building our mofa model
model <- create_mofa_from_MultiAssayExperiment(mae,
  ↵ groups = "Diet",
  ↵ extract_metadata =
  ↵ ↵ TRUE)
model

## Untrained MOFA model with the following characteristics:
## Number of views: 3
## Views names: microbiota metabolites biomarkers
## Number of features (per view): 38 38 39
## Number of groups: 2
## Groups names: High-fat Low-fat
## Number of samples (per group): 20 20
##

```

Model options could be defined as follows:

```

model_opts <- get_default_model_options(model)
model_opts$num_factors <- 5
head(model_opts)

## $likelihoods
## microbiota metabolites biomarkers
## "gaussian" "gaussian" "gaussian"
##
## $num_factors
## [1] 5
##
## $spikeslab_factors
## [1] FALSE
##
## $spikeslab_weights

```

```
## [1] TRUE
##
## $ard_factors
## [1] TRUE
##
## $ard_weights
## [1] TRUE
```

Model's training options are defined with the following:

```
train_opts <- get_default_training_options(model)
head(train_opts)
```

```
## $maxiter
## [1] 1000
##
## $convergence_mode
## [1] "fast"
##
## $drop_factor_threshold
## [1] -1
##
## $verbose
## [1] FALSE
##
## $startELBO
## [1] 1
##
## $freqELBO
## [1] 5
```

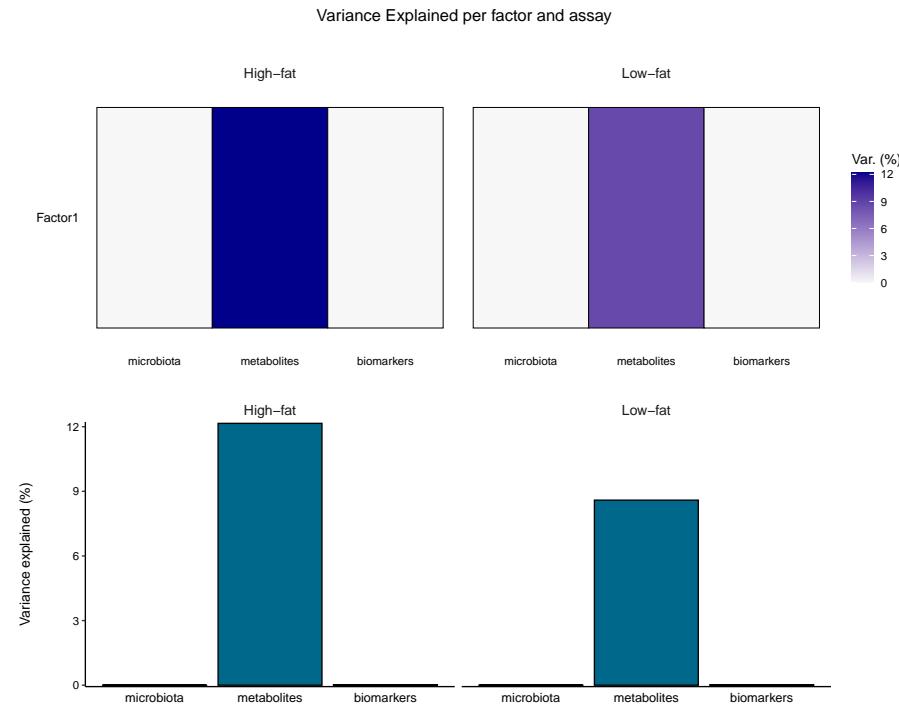
Preparing and training the model:

```
model.prepared <- prepare_mofa(
  object = model,
  model_options = model_opts
)
model.trained <- run_mofa(model.prepared)
```

Visualizing the variance explained:

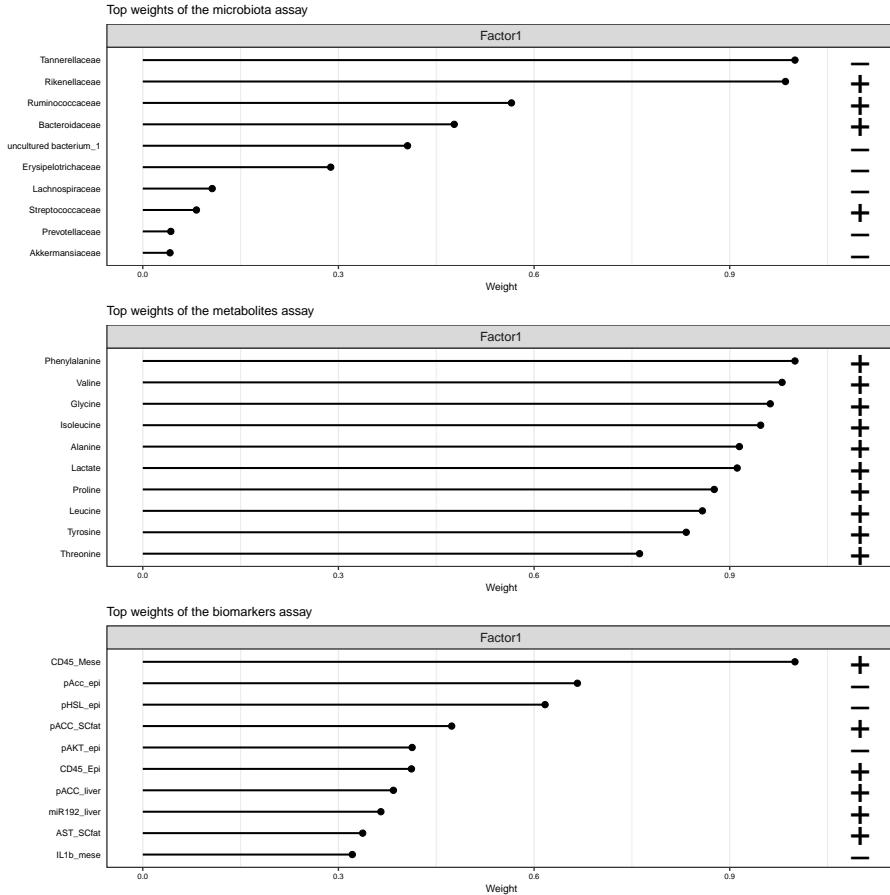
```
library(patchwork)
library(ggplot2)
```

```
wrap_plots(
  plot_variance_explained(model.trained, x="view", y="factor",
  ↵ plot_total = T,
  ↵ nrow = 2
) + plot_annotation(title = "Variance Explained per factor and
  ↵ assay",
  ↵ theme = theme(plot.title = element_text(hjust
  ↵ = 0.5)))
```



The top weights for each assay using all 5 factors:

```
plots <- lapply(c("microbiota", "metabolites", "biomarkers"),
  ↵ function(name) {
    plot_top_weights(model.trained,
      ↵ view = name,
      ↵ factors = "all",
      ↵ nfeatures = 10) +
    labs(title = paste0("Top weights of the ", name, "
      ↵ assay"))
  })
wrap_plots(plots, nrow = 3) & theme(text = element_text(size =
  ↵ 8))
```



More tutorials and examples of using the package are found at: [link](#)

## Session Info

View session info

```
R version 4.2.1 (2022-06-23)
Platform: x86_64-pc-linux-gnu (64-bit)
Running under: Ubuntu 20.04.4 LTS
```

```
Matrix products: default
BLAS:    /usr/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/openblas-pthread/libblas.so.3
LAPACK:  /usr/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/openblas-pthread/liblapack.so.3
```

```

locale:
[1] LC_CTYPE=en_US.UTF-8          LC_NUMERIC=C
[3] LC_TIME=en_US.UTF-8          LC_COLLATE=en_US.UTF-8
[5] LC_MONETARY=en_US.UTF-8       LC_MESSAGES=en_US.UTF-8
[7] LC_PAPER=en_US.UTF-8         LC_NAME=C
[9] LC_ADDRESS=C                 LC_TELEPHONE=C
[11] LC_MEASUREMENT=en_US.UTF-8   LC_IDENTIFICATION=C

attached base packages:
[1] grid      stats4    stats     graphics  grDevices  utils      datasets
[8] methods   base

other attached packages:
[1] ggplot2_3.3.6            patchwork_1.1.2
[3] reticulate_1.26           MOFA2_1.6.0
[5] ComplexHeatmap_2.12.1     stringr_1.4.1
[7] microbiomeDataSets_1.1.7   mia_1.5.16
[9] MultiAssayExperiment_1.22.0 TreeSummarizedExperiment_2.1.4
[11] Biostrings_2.64.1          XVector_0.36.0
[13] SingleCellExperiment_1.18.1 SummarizedExperiment_1.26.1
[15] Biobase_2.56.0            GenomicRanges_1.48.0
[17] GenomeInfoDb_1.32.4        IRanges_2.30.1
[19] S4Vectors_0.34.0           BiocGenerics_0.42.0
[21] MatrixGenerics_1.8.1       matrixStats_0.62.0-9003
[23] BiocStyle_2.24.0           rebook_1.6.0

loaded via a namespace (and not attached):
[1] circlize_0.4.15           AnnotationHub_3.4.0
[3] corrplot_0.92              BiocFileCache_2.4.0
[5] plyr_1.8.7                 lazyeval_0.2.2
[7] splines_4.2.1              BiocParallel_1.30.3
[9] scater_1.24.0              digest_0.6.29
[11] foreach_1.5.2              yulab.utils_0.0.5
[13] htmltools_0.5.3            viridis_0.6.2
[15] fansi_1.0.3                magrittr_2.0.3
[17] memoise_2.0.1              ScaledMatrix_1.4.1
[19] cluster_2.1.4              doParallel_1.0.17
[21] DECIPHER_2.24.0             colorspace_2.0-3
[23] blob_1.2.3                 rappdirs_0.3.3
[25] ggrepel_0.9.1              xfun_0.33
[27] dplyr_1.0.10               crayon_1.5.2
[29] RCurl_1.98-1.9             jsonlite_1.8.2
[31] graph_1.74.0               iterators_1.0.14
[33] ape_5.6-2                  glue_1.6.2
[35] gtable_0.3.1               zlibbioc_1.42.0

```

```
[37] GetoptLong_1.0.5           DelayedArray_0.22.0
[39] BiocSingular_1.12.0       Rhdf5lib_1.18.2
[41] shape_1.4.6              HDF5Array_1.24.2
[43] scales_1.2.1             pheatmap_1.0.12
[45] DBI_1.1.3                Rcpp_1.0.9
[47] viridisLite_0.4.1        xtable_1.8-4
[49] clue_0.3-61              decontam_1.16.0
[51] tidytree_0.4.1            bit_4.0.4
[53] rsvd_1.0.5               httr_1.4.4
[55] RColorBrewer_1.1-3        dir.expiry_1.4.0
[57] ellipsis_0.3.2            farver_2.1.1
[59] pkgconfig_2.0.3            XML_3.99-0.11
[61] scuttle_1.6.3             uwot_0.1.14
[63] CodeDepends_0.6.5         dbplyr_2.2.1
[65] here_1.0.1                utf8_1.2.2
[67] labeling_0.4.2             tidyselect_1.1.2
[69] rlang_1.0.6                reshape2_1.4.4
[71] later_1.3.0               AnnotationDbi_1.58.0
[73] munsell_0.5.0              BiocVersion_3.15.2
[75] tools_4.2.1                cachem_1.0.6
[77] cli_3.4.1                 DirichletMultinomial_1.38.0
[79] generics_0.1.3              RSQLite_2.2.18
[81] ExperimentHub_2.4.0        evaluate_0.16
[83] fastmap_1.1.0              yaml_2.3.5
[85] knitr_1.40                 bit64_4.0.5
[87] purrr_0.3.4                KEGGREST_1.36.3
[89] nlme_3.1-159               sparseMatrixStats_1.8.0
[91] mime_0.12                  compiler_4.2.1
[93] beeswarm_0.4.0              filelock_1.0.2
[95] curl_4.3.2                 png_0.1-7
[97] interactiveDisplayBase_1.34.0 treeio_1.20.2
[99] tibble_3.1.8                stringi_1.7.8
[101] basilisk.utils_1.8.0       highr_0.9
[103]forcats_0.5.2              lattice_0.20-45
[105] Matrix_1.5-1              vegan_2.6-2
[107] permute_0.9-7             vctrs_0.4.2
[109] rhdf5filters_1.8.0         pillar_1.8.1
[111] lifecycle_1.0.2            BiocManager_1.30.18
[113] GlobalOptions_0.1.2        BiocNeighbors_1.14.0
[115] cowplot_1.1.1              bitops_1.0-7
[117] irlba_2.3.5.1             httpuv_1.6.6
[119] R6_2.5.1                   bookdown_0.29
[121] promises_1.2.0.1           gridExtra_2.3
[123] vipor_0.4.5                codetools_0.2-18
[125] MASS_7.3-58.1              assertthat_0.2.1
[127] rhdf5_2.40.0               rprojroot_2.0.3
```

```
[129] rjson_0.2.21           withr_2.5.0
[131] GenomeInfoDbData_1.2.8 mgcv_1.8-40
[133] parallel_4.2.1          beachmat_2.12.0
[135] basilisk_1.8.1          tidyR_1.2.1
[137] rmarkdown_2.16            DelayedMatrixStats_1.18.1
[139] Rtsne_0.16                Cairo_1.6-0
[141] shiny_1.7.2               ggbeeswarm_0.6.0
```



# Chapter 14

## Visualization

Whether a data set contains information on a microbial community or it originates from a different source, the way that data are visualized inevitably shapes how they will be interpreted, and motivates the next steps of the analysis.

A large variety of graphing methods belong to microbial analysis, but only few are the choices that will return useful answers about the data. Therefore, knowledge on the available tools and their possible applications plays an important role in selecting the most suitable method for the asked question.

This chapter introduces the reader to a number of visualization techniques found in this book, such as:

- bar plots
- box plots
- heatmaps
- ordination charts
- regression charts
- trees

The toolkit which provides the essential plotting functionality includes the following packages:

- *patchwork*, *cowplot*, *ggpubr* and *gridExtra*: plot layout and multi-panel plotting
- *mia Viz*: specific visualization tools for `TreeSummaizedExperiment` objects
- *scater*: specific visualization tools for `SingleCellExperiment` objects
- *ggplot2*, *pheatmap*, *ggtree*, *sechm*: composition heatmaps
- *ANCOMBC*, *ALDEx2* and *Maaslin2*: visual differential abundance
- *fido*: tree-based methods for differential abundance
- *plotly*: animated and 3D plotting

For systematic and extensive tutorials on the visual tools available in *mia*, readers can refer to the following material:

- microbiome tutorials

## 14.1 Pre-analysis exploration

### 14.1.1 Accessing row and column data

SCE and TSE objects contain multiple layers of information in the form of rows, columns and meta data. The *scater* package supports in accessing, modifying and graphing the meta data related to features as well as samples.

```
# list row meta data
names(rowData(tse))

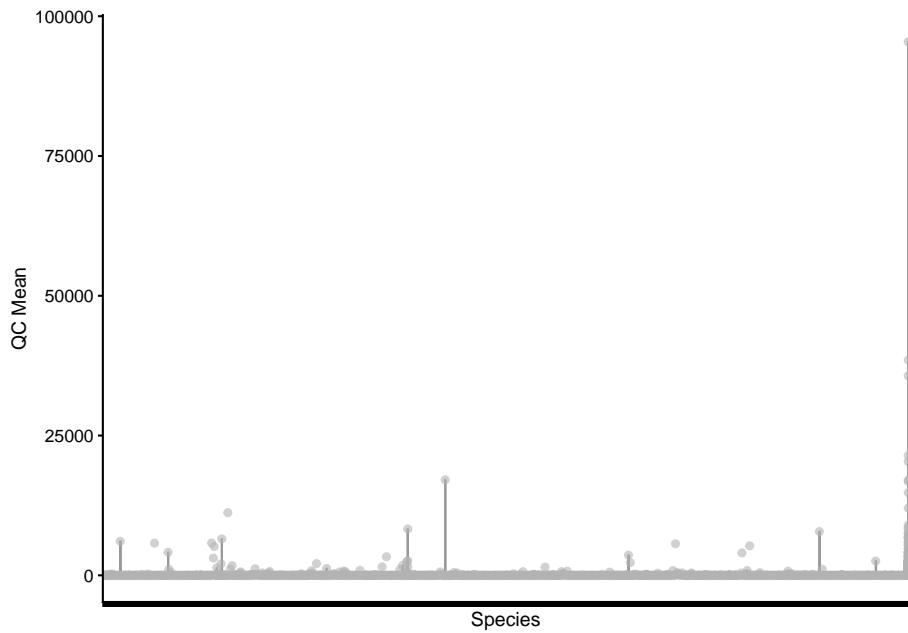
## [1] "Kingdom" "Phylum"   "Class"    "Order"    "Family"   "Genus"    "Species"

# list column meta data
names(colData(tse))

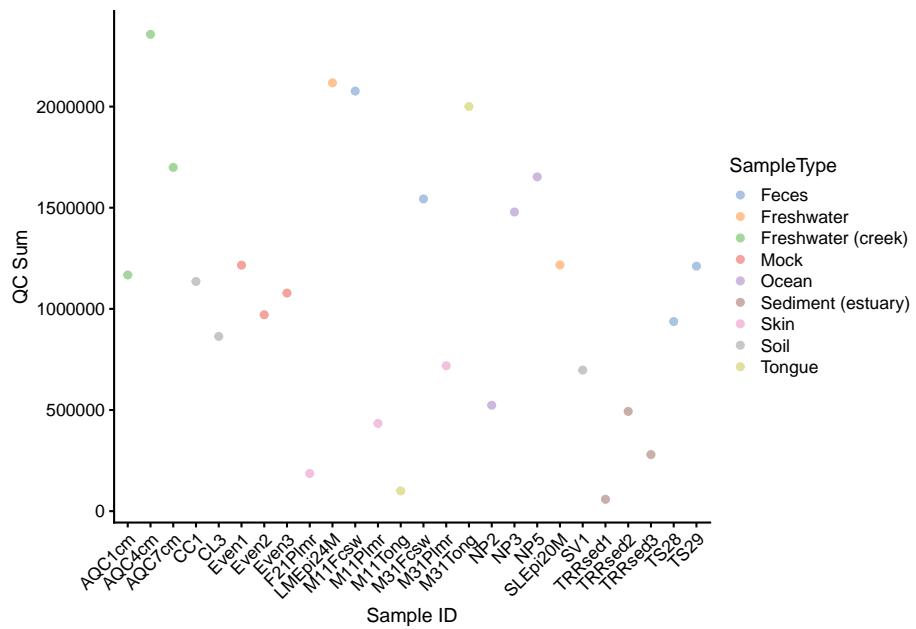
## [1] "X.SampleID"           "Primer"
## [3] "Final_Barcodes"        "Barcode_truncated_plus_T"
## [5] "Barcode_full_length"   "SampleType"
## [7] "Description"
```

Such meta data can be directly plotted with the functions `plotRowData` and `plotColData`.

```
# obtain QC data
tse <- addPerCellQC(tse)
tse <- addPerFeatureQC(tse)
# plot QC Mean against Species
plotRowData(tse, "mean", "Species") +
  theme(axis.text.x = element_blank()) +
  labs(x = "Species", y = "QC Mean")
```

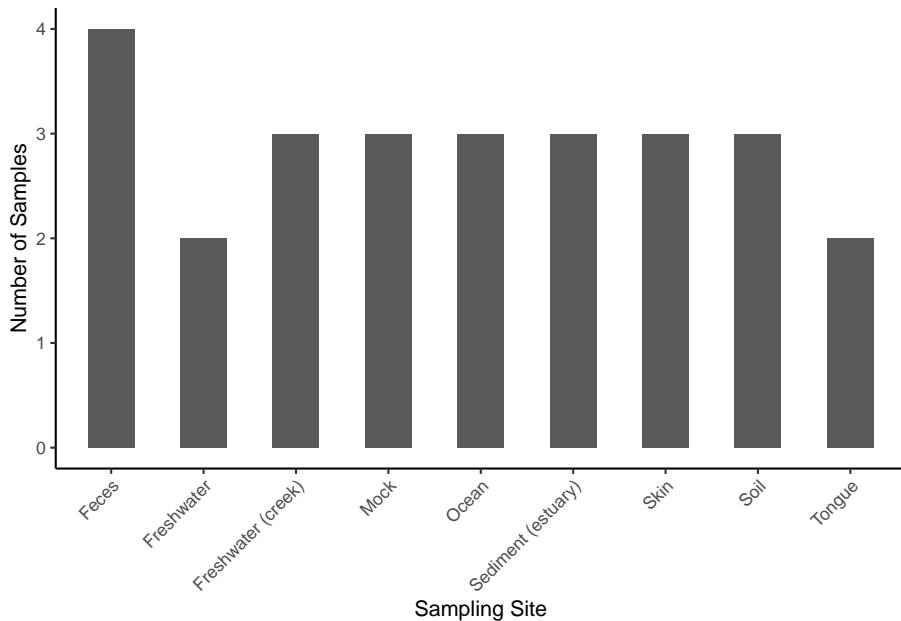


```
# plot QC Sum against Sample ID, colour-labeled by Sample Type
plotColData(tse, "sum", "X.SampleID", colour_by = "SampleType") +
  theme(axis.text.x = element_text(angle = 45, hjust = 1)) +
  labs(x = "Sample ID", y = "QC Sum")
```



Alternatively, they can be converted to a `data.frame` object and passed to `ggplot`.

```
# store colData into a data frame
coldata <- as.data.frame(colData(tse))
# plot Number of Samples against Sampling Site
ggplot(coldata, aes(x = SampleType)) +
  geom_bar(width = 0.5) +
  theme(axis.text.x = element_text(angle = 45, hjust = 1)) +
  labs(x = "Sampling Site",
       y = "Number of Samples")
```



Further methods of application can be found in the chapters 5.3 and 7.1.1 and in a few external tutorials with open data. Additionally, `rowData` and `colData` allow manipulation and subsetting of large data sets into smaller units, as explained in chapter 4.

### 14.1.2 Viewing abundance and prevalence patterns

Prior-to-analysis exploration may involve questions such as how microorganisms are distributed across samples (abundance) and what microorganisms are present in most of the samples (prevalence). The information on abundance and prevalence can be summarized into a `jitter` or `density plot` and a `tree`, respectively, with the *miaViz* package.

Specifically, the functions `plotAbundance`, `plotAbundanceDensity` and `plotRowTree` are used, and examples on their usage are discussed throughout chapter 5.

## 14.2 Diversity estimation

Alpha diversity is commonly measured as one of the diversity indices explained in chapter 7. Because the focus lies on each sample separately, one-dimensional plots, such as `scatter`, `violin` and `box plots`, are suitable.

Beta diversity is generally evaluated as one of the dissimilarity indices reported in chapter 8. Unlike alpha diversity, samples are compared collectively to estimate the heterogeneity across them, therefore multidimensional plots, such as **Shepard** and **ordination plots** are suitable.

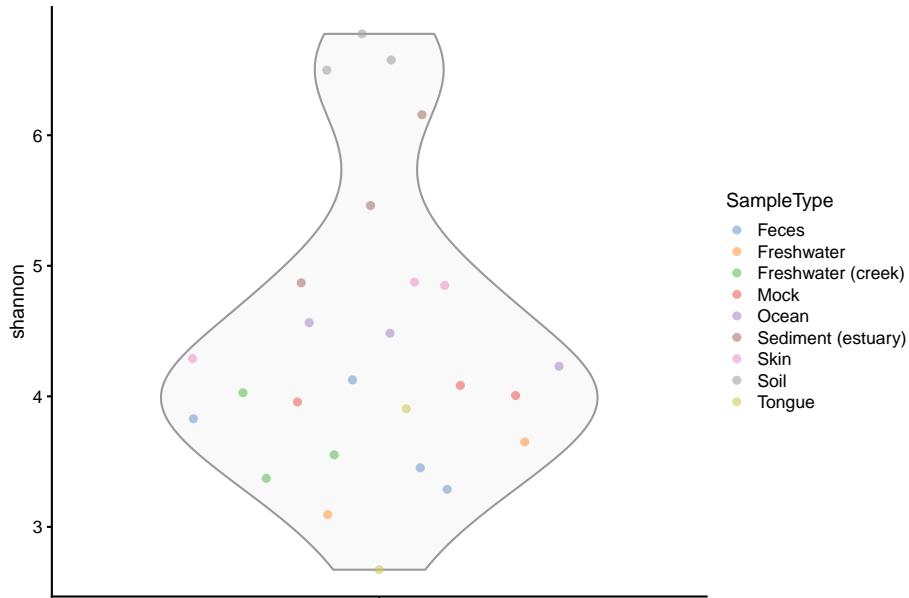
	alpha diversity	beta diversity
used metrics	diversity indices	dissimilarity indices
metric dimensionality	one-dimensional	multidimensional
suitable visualization	scatter, violin, box plots	Shepard, ordination plots

As a conclusion, visualization techniques for alpha and beta diversity significantly differ from one another.

### 14.2.1 Alpha diversity with scatter, violin and box plots

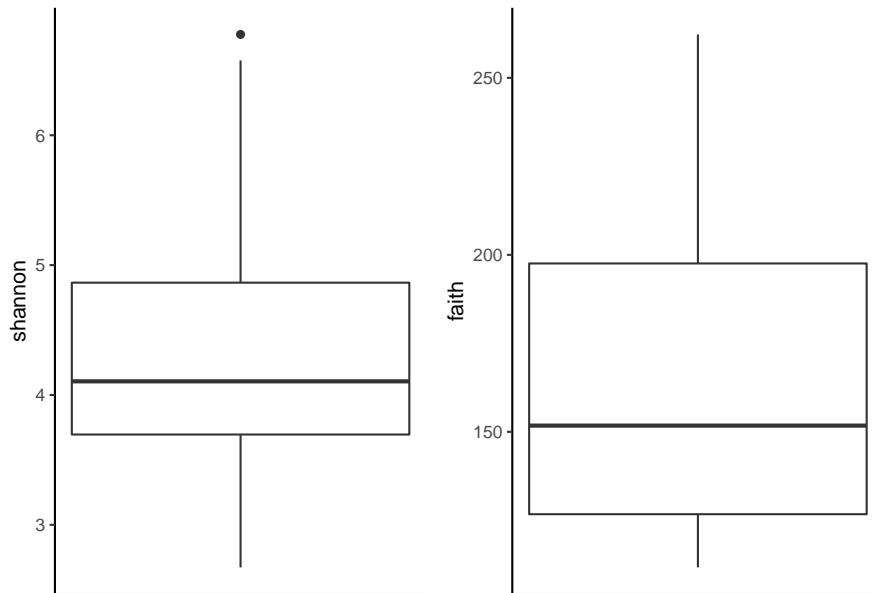
The basic method to visualize the diversity values assigned to the different samples in a TSE object includes the following, where each data point represents one sample:

```
# estimate shannon diversity index
tse <- mia::estimateDiversity(tse,
                                assay_name = "counts",
                                index = "shannon",
                                name = "shannon")
# plot shannon diversity index, colour-labeled by Sample Type
plotColData(tse, "shannon", colour_by = "SampleType")
```



The several indices available for the evaluation of alpha diversity often return slightly divergent results, which can be visually compared with a multiple violin or box plot. For this purpose, `plotColData` (for violin plots) or `ggplot` (for box plots) are recursively applied to a number of diversity indices with the function `lapply` and the multi-panel plotting functionality of the *patchwork* package is then exploited.

```
# estimate faith diversity index
tse <- mia::estimateFaith(tse,
                           assay_name = "counts")
# store colData into a data frame
coldata <- as.data.frame(colData(tse))
# generate plots for shannon and faith indices
# and store them into a list
plots <- lapply(c("shannon", "faith"),
                function(i) ggplot(coldata, aes_string(y = i)) +
                  geom_boxplot() +
                  theme(axis.text.x = element_blank(),
                        axis.ticks.x = element_blank()))
# combine plots with patchwork
plots[[1]] + plots[[2]]
```



The analogous output in the form of a violin plot is obtained in chapter 7.1.3. In addition, box plots that group samples according to certain information, such as origin, sex, age and health condition, can be labeled with p-values for significant differences with the package *ggsignif* package, as shown in chapter 7.1.2.

### 14.2.2 Beta diversity with Shepard and coordination plots

The *scater* package offers the general function `plotReducedDim`. In its basic form, it takes a TSE object and the results on sample similarity stored in the same object, which can be evaluated with the following coordination methods:

- `runMDS`
- `runNMDS`
- `runPCA`
- `runTSNE`
- `runUMAP`

Since these clustering techniques allow for multiple coordinates or components, **coordination plots** can also span multiple dimensions, which is explained in chapter @ref{extras}.

```
# perform NMDS coordination method
tse <- runNMDS(tse,
```

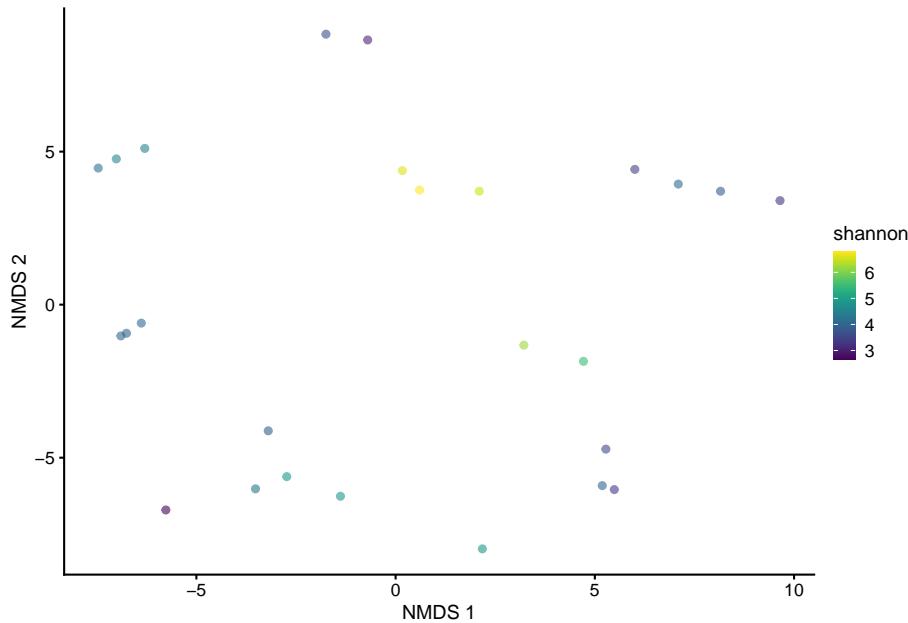
```

FUN = vegan::vegdist,
      name = "NMDS")

## initial value 47.733208
## iter 5 value 33.853364
## iter 10 value 32.891200
## final value 32.823570
## converged

# plot results of a 2-component NMDS on tse,
# coloured-scaled by shannon diversity index
plotReducedDim(tse, "NMDS", colour_by = "shannon")

```



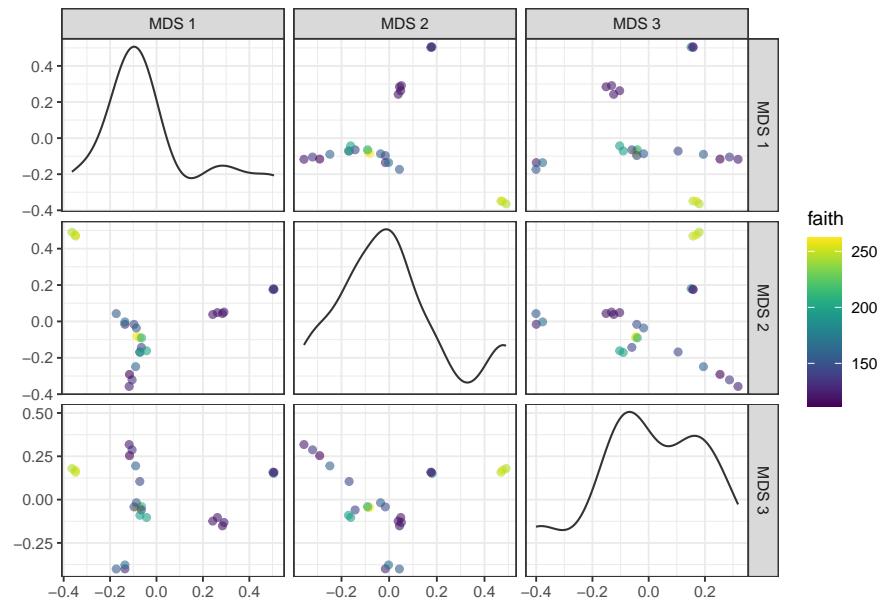
Multiple combinations of coordinates or dimensions can also be integrated into a multi-panel arrangement.

```

# perform MDS coordination method
tse <- runMDS(tse,
  FUN = vegan::vegdist,
  method = "bray",
  name = "MDS",
  exprs_values = "counts",
  ncomponents = 3)

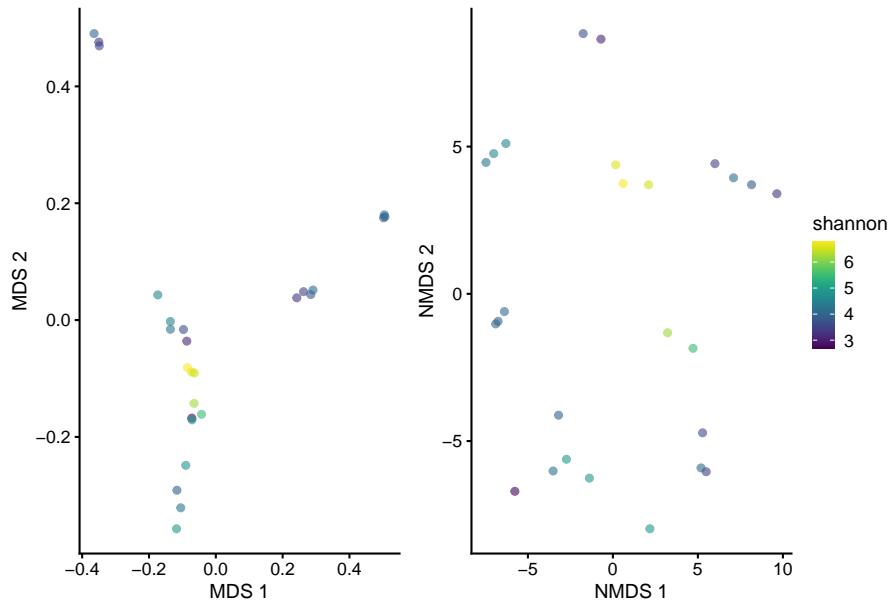
```

```
# plot results of a 3-component MDS on tse,
# coloured-scaled by faith diversity index
plotReducedDim(tse, "MDS", ncomponents = c(1:3), colour_by =
  "faith")
```



Similarly to iterating `plotColData` over indices of alpha diversity, `lapply` can be used in combination with `patchwork` to recursively apply `plotReducedDim` and visually compare results among various coordination methods.

```
# generate plots for MDS and NMDS methods
# and store them into a list
plots <- lapply(c("MDS", "NMDS"),
  plotReducedDim,
  object = tse,
  colour_by = "shannon")
# combine plots with patchwork
plots[[1]] + plots[[2]] +
  plot_layout(guides = "collect")
```



For similar examples, readers are referred to chapter 8. Further material on the graphic capabilities of *patchwork* is available in its official package tutorial.

## 14.3 Statistical analysis

### 14.3.1 Heatmaps

As described in chapter 9.1, bar plots and heatmaps can offer a useful insight into the composition of a community. Simple methods involve the functions `plotAbundance` and `geom_tile` in combination with `scale_fill_gradientn` from the packages *miaViz* and *ggplot2*, respectively.

For instance, below the composition of multiple samples (x axis) is reported in terms of relative abundances (y axis) for the top 10 taxa at the Order rank. Bar plots and heatmaps with analogous information at the Phylum level are available in the aforementioned chapter.

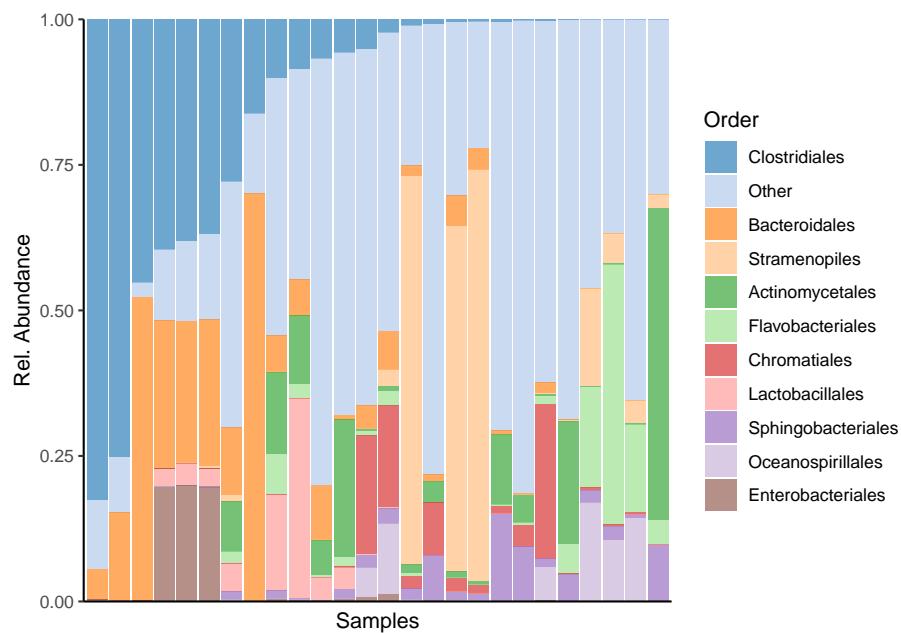
```
# agglomerate tse by Order
tse_order <- agglomerateByRank(tse,
                                rank = "Order",
                                onRankOnly = TRUE)
# transform counts into relative abundance
tse_order <- transformCounts(tse_order,
                             assay_name = "counts",
```

```

method = "relabundance")

# get top orders
top_taxa <- getTopTaxa(tse_order,
                        top = 10,
                        assay_name = "relabundance")
# leave only names for top 10 orders and label the rest with
# "Other"
order_renamed <- lapply(rowData(tse_order)$Order,
                        function(x){if (x %in% top_taxa) {x} else
                        {"Other"}})
rowData(tse_order)$Order <- as.character(order_renamed)
# plot composition as a bar plot
plotAbundance(tse_order,
              assay_name = "relabundance",
              rank = "Order",
              order_rank_by = "abund",
              order_sample_by = "Clostridiales")

```



To add a sample annotation, you can combine plots that you get from the output of `plotAbundance`.

```

# Create plots
plots <- plotAbundance(tse_order, assay_name = "relabundance",
                       rank = "Order",

```

```
    order_rank_by = "abund", order_sample_by =
      "Clostridiales",
      features = "SampleType")

# Modify the legend of the first plot to be smaller
plots[[1]] <- plots[[1]] +
  theme(legend.key.size = unit(0.3, 'cm'),
        legend.text = element_text(size = 6),
        legend.title = element_text(size = 8))

# Modify the legend of the second plot to be smaller
plots[[2]] <- plots[[2]] +
  theme(legend.key.height = unit(0.3, 'cm'),
        legend.key.width = unit(0.3, 'cm'),
        legend.text = element_text(size = 6),
        legend.title = element_text(size = 8),
        legend.direction = "vertical")

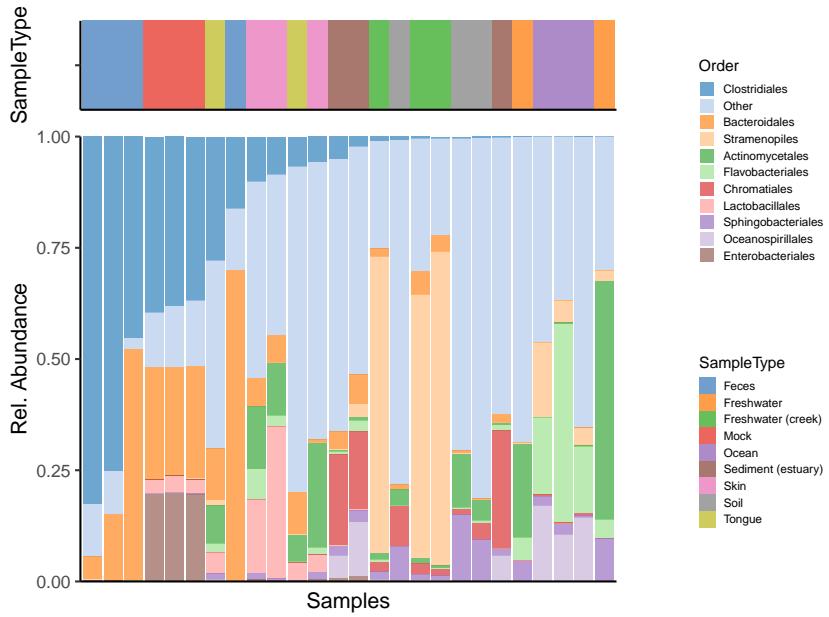
# Load required packages
if( !require("ggpubr") ){
  install.packages("ggpubr")
  library("ggpubr")
}

# Load required packages
if( !require("patchwork") ){
  install.packages("patchwork")
  library("patchwork")
}

# Combine legends
legend <- wrap_plots(as_ggplot(get_legend(plots[[1]])),
  as_ggplot(get_legend(plots[[2]])), ncol = 1)

# Remove legends from the plots
plots[[1]] <- plots[[1]] + theme(legend.position = "none")
plots[[2]] <- plots[[2]] + theme(legend.position = "none",
  axis.title.x=element_blank())

# Combine plots
plot <- wrap_plots(plots[[2]], plots[[1]], ncol = 1, heights =
  c(2, 10))
# Combine the plot with the legend
wrap_plots(plot, legend, nrow = 1, widths = c(2, 1))
```



For more sophisticated visualizations than those produced with `plotAbundance` and `ggplot2`, the packages `pheatmap` and `sechm` provide methods to include feature and sample clusters in a heatmap, along with further functionality.

```
# Agglomerate tse by phylum
tse_phylum <- agglomerateByRank(tse,
                                    rank = "Phylum",
                                    onRankOnly = TRUE)
# Add clr-transformation on samples
tse_phylum <- transformSamples(tse_phylum, method =
  ~ "relabundance", pseudocount = 1)
tse_phylum <- transformSamples(tse_phylum, method = "clr",
  ~ assay_name = "relabundance")
# Add z-transformation on features (taxa)
tse_phylum <- transformFeatures(tse_phylum, assay_name = "clr",
  method = "z", name = "clr_z")

# Takes subset: only samples from feces, skin, or tongue
tse_phylum_subset <- tse_phylum[ , colData(tse_phylum)$SampleType
  ~ %in% c("Feces", "Skin", "Tongue") ]

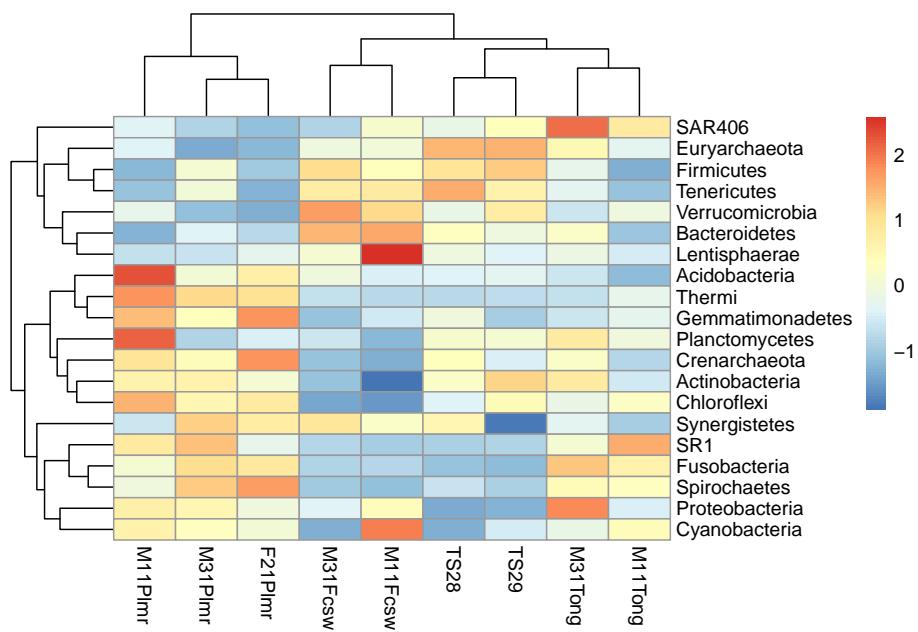
# Does clr-transformation
tse_phylum_subset <- transformSamples(tse_phylum_subset, method =
  ~ "relabundance", pseudocount = 1)
tse_phylum_subset <- transformSamples(tse_phylum_subset, method =
  ~ "clr", assay_name = "relabundance")
```

```
# Does z-transformation
tse_phylum_subset <- transformFeatures(tse_phylum_subset,
  assay_name = "clr",
  method = "z", name =
  "clr_z")

# Get n most abundant taxa, and subsets the data by them
top_taxa <- getTopTaxa(tse_phylum_subset, top = 20)
tse_phylum_subset <- tse_phylum_subset[top_taxa, ]

# Gets the assay table
mat <- assay(tse_phylum_subset, "clr_z")

# Creates the heatmap
pheatmap(mat)
```



We can cluster both samples and features hierarchically and add them to the x and y axes of the heatmap, respectively.

```
# Hierarchical clustering
taxa_hclust <- hclust(dist(mat), method = "complete")

# Creates a phylogenetic tree
taxa_tree <- as.phylo(taxa_hclust)
```

```

# Plot taxa tree
taxa_tree <- ggtree(taxa_tree) +
  theme(plot.margin=margin(0,0,0,0)) # removes margins

# Get order of taxa in plot
taxa_ordered <- get_taxa_name(taxa_tree)

# to view the tree, run
# taxa_tree

```

Based on phylo tree, we decide to create three clusters.

```

# Creates clusters
taxa_clusters <- cutree(tree = taxa_hclust, k = 3)

# Converts into data frame
taxa_clusters <- data.frame(clusters = taxa_clusters)
taxa_clusters$clusters <- factor(taxa_clusters$clusters)

# Order data so that it's same as in phylo tree
taxa_clusters <- taxa_clusters[taxa_ordered, , drop = FALSE]

# Prints taxa and their clusters
taxa_clusters

```

	clusters
## Chloroflexi	3
## Actinobacteria	3
## Crenarchaeota	3
## Planctomycetes	3
## Gemmatimonadetes	3
## Thermi	3
## Acidobacteria	3
## Spirochaetes	2
## Fusobacteria	2
## SR1	2
## Cyanobacteria	2
## Proteobacteria	2
## Synergistetes	2
## Lentisphaerae	1
## Bacteroidetes	1
## Verrucomicrobia	1
## Tenericutes	1

```
## Firmicutes           1
## Euryarchaeota        1
## SAR406               1
```

The information on the clusters is then added to the feature meta data.

```
# Adds information to rowData
rowData(tse_phylum_subset)$clusters <-
  taxa_clusters[order(match(rownames(taxa_clusters),
                                rownames(tse_phylum_subset)))]
```

# Prints taxa and their clusters

```
rowData(tse_phylum_subset)$clusters
```

```
## [1] 1 1 2 3 2 2 1 1 1 1 3 2 3 3 3 2 2 3 3 1
## Levels: 1 2 3
```

Similarly, samples are hierarchically grouped into clusters, the most suitable number of clusters for the plot is selected and the new information is stored into the sample meta data.

```
# Hierarchical clustering
sample_hclust <- hclust(dist(t(mat)), method = "complete")

# Creates a phylogenetic tree
sample_tree <- as.phylo(sample_hclust)

# Plot sample tree
sample_tree <- ggtree(sample_tree) + layout_dendrogram() +
  theme(plot.margin=margin(0,0,0,0)) # removes margins

# Get order of samples in plot
samples_ordered <- rev(get_taxa_name(sample_tree))

# to view the tree, run
# sample_tree

# Creates clusters
sample_clusters <- factor(cutree(tree = sample_hclust, k = 3))

# Converts into data frame
sample_data <- data.frame(clusters = sample_clusters)
```

```

# Order data so that it's same as in phylo tree
sample_data <- sample_data[samples_ordered, , drop = FALSE]

# Order data based on
tse_phylum_subset <- tse_phylum_subset[ , rownames(sample_data)]

# Add sample type data
sample_data$sample_types <-
  ↵ unfactor(colData(tse_phylum_subset)$SampleType)

sample_data

```

	clusters	sample_types
## M11Plmr	2	Skin
## M31Plmr	2	Skin
## F21Plmr	2	Skin
## M31Fcsw	1	Feces
## M11Fcsw	1	Feces
## TS28	3	Feces
## TS29	3	Feces
## M31Tong	3	Tongue
## M11Tong	3	Tongue

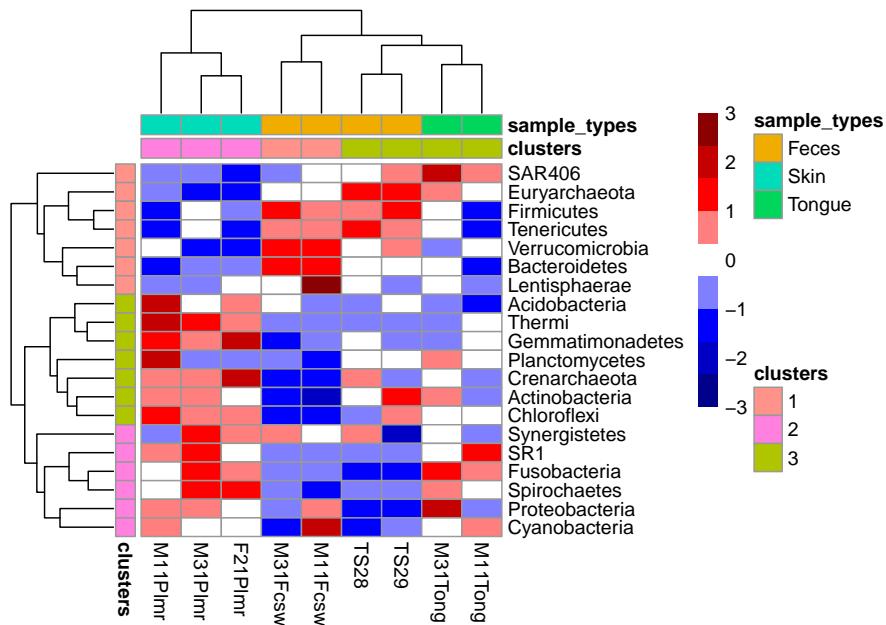
Now we can create heatmap with additional annotations.

```

# Determines the scaling of colorss
# Scale colors
breaks <- seq(-ceiling(max(abs(mat))), ceiling(max(abs(mat))),
               length.out = ifelse( max(abs(mat))>5,
                                    ↵ 2*ceiling(max(abs(mat))), 10 ) )
colors <- colorRampPalette(c("darkblue", "blue", "white", "red",
                           ↵ "darkred"))(length(breaks)-1)

pheatmap(mat, annotation_row = taxa_clusters,
         annotation_col = sample_data,
         breaks = breaks,
         color = colors)

```

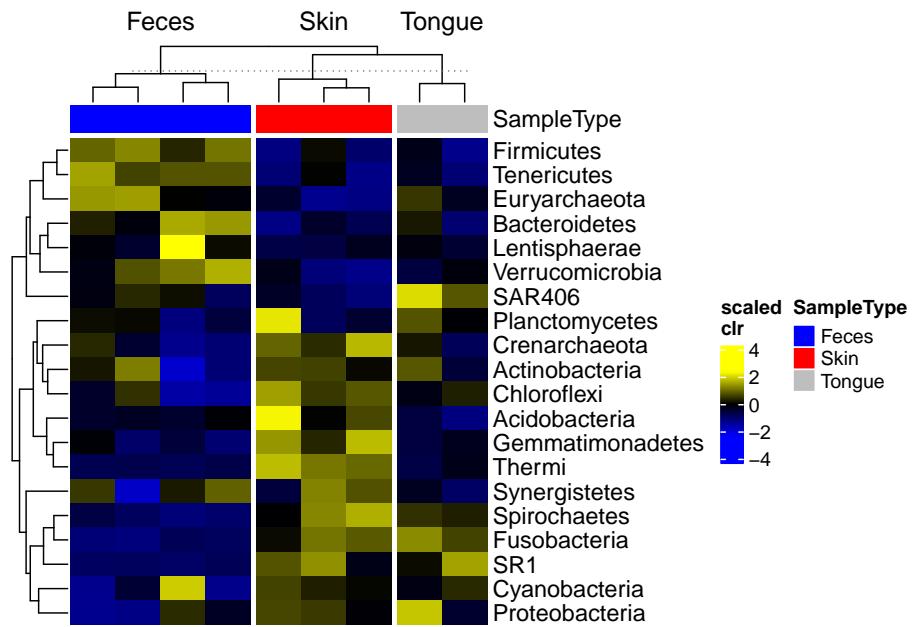


The package *sechm* allows for further visual capabilities and flexibility. In this case, the clustering step is automatically performed by the plotting function and does not need to be executed in advance.

```
# Stores annotation colors to metadata
metadata(tse_phylum_subset)$anno_colors$SampleType <- c(Feces =
  "blue",
  Skin =
  "red",
  Tongue =
  "gray")
```

```
# Create a plot
sechm(tse_phylum_subset,
  features = rownames(tse_phylum_subset),
  assayName = "clr",
  do.scale = TRUE,
  top_annotation = c("SampleType"),
  gaps_at = "SampleType",
  cluster_cols = TRUE, cluster_rows = TRUE)
```



It is also possible to create an analogous heatmap by just using the *ggplot2* package. However, a relatively long code is required to generate an identical output.

```
# Add feature names to column as a factor
taxa_clusters$Feature <- rownames(taxa_clusters)
taxa_clusters$Feature <- factor(taxa_clusters$Feature, levels =
  ↪ taxa_clusters$Feature)

# Create annotation plot
row_annotation <- ggplot(taxa_clusters) +
  geom_tile(aes(x = NA, y = Feature, fill = clusters)) +
  ↪ coord_equal(ratio = 1) +
  theme(
    axis.text.x=element_blank(),
    axis.text.y=element_blank(),
    axis.ticks.y=element_blank(),
    axis.title.y=element_blank(),
    axis.title.x = element_text(angle = 90, vjust = 0.5,
      ↪ hjust=1),
    plot.margin=margin(0,0,0,0),
    ) +
  labs(fill = "Clusters", x = "Clusters")

# to view the notation, run
```

```
# row_annotation

# Add sample names to one of the columns
sample_data$sample <- factor(rownames(sample_data), levels =
  ↪  rownames(sample_data))

# Create annotation plot
sample_types_annotation <- ggplot(sample_data) +
  ↪  scale_y_discrete(position = "right", expand = c(0,0)) +
  ↪  geom_tile(aes(y = NA, x = sample, fill = sample_types)) +
  ↪  coord_equal(ratio = 1) +
  theme(
    axis.text.x=element_blank(),
    axis.text.y=element_blank(),
    axis.title.x=element_blank(),
    axis.ticks.x=element_blank(),
    plot.margin=margin(0,0,0,0),
    axis.title.y.right = element_text(angle=0, vjust = 0.5)
  ) +
  labs(fill = "Sample types", y = "Sample types")
# to view the notation, run
# sample_types_annotation

# Create annotation plot
sample_clusters_annotation <- ggplot(sample_data) +
  ↪  scale_y_discrete(position = "right", expand = c(0,0)) +
  ↪  geom_tile(aes(y = NA, x = sample, fill = clusters)) +
  ↪  coord_equal(ratio = 1) +
  theme(
    axis.text.x=element_blank(),
    axis.text.y=element_blank(),
    axis.title.x=element_blank(),
    axis.ticks.x=element_blank(),
    plot.margin=margin(0,0,0,0),
    axis.title.y.right = element_text(angle=0, vjust = 0.5)
  ) +
  labs(fill = "Clusters", y = "Clusters")
# to view the notation, run
# sample_clusters_annotation

# Order data based on clusters and sample types
mat <- mat[unfactor(taxa_clusters$Feature),
  ↪  unfactor(sample_data$sample)]

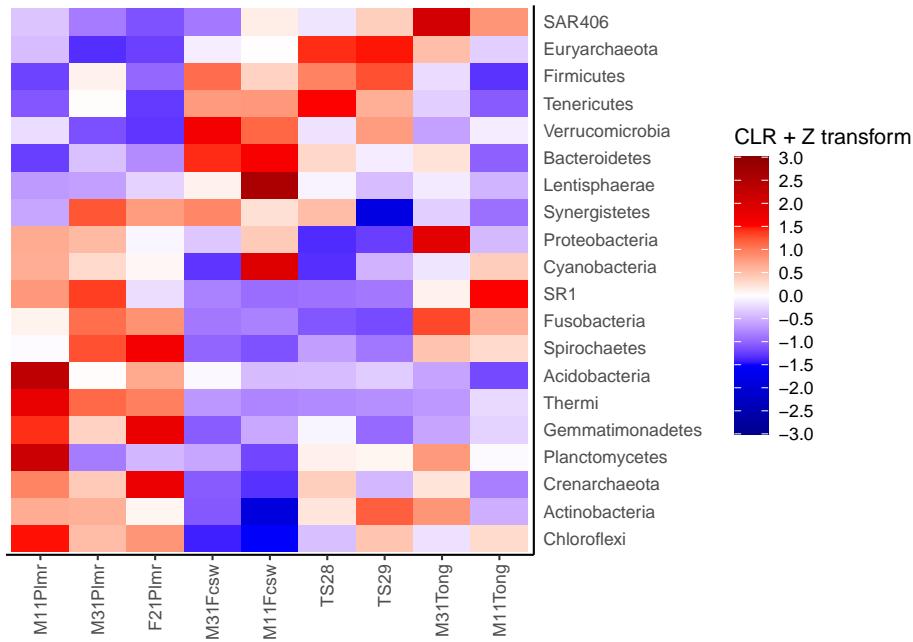
# ggplot requires data in melted format
```

```
melted_mat <- melt(mat)
colnames(melted_mat) <- c("Taxa", "Sample", "clr_z")

# Determines the scaling of colorss
maxval <- round(max(abs(melted_mat$clr_z)))
limits <- c(-maxval, maxval)
breaks <- seq(from = min(limits), to = max(limits), by = 0.5)
colours <- c("darkblue", "blue", "white", "red", "darkred")

heatmap <- ggplot(melted_mat) +
  geom_tile(aes(x = Sample, y = Taxa, fill = clr_z)) +
  theme(
    axis.title.y=element_blank(),
    axis.title.x=element_blank(),
    axis.ticks.y=element_blank(),
    axis.text.x = element_text(angle = 90, vjust = 0.5, hjust=1),
    plot.margin=margin(0,0,0,0), # removes margins
    legend.key.height= unit(1, 'cm')
  ) +
  scale_fill_gradientn(name = "CLR + Z transform",
    breaks = breaks,
    limits = limits,
    colours = colours) +
  scale_y_discrete(position = "right")

heatmap
```



```

# Create layout
design <- c(
  area(3, 1, 4, 1),
  area(1, 2, 1, 3),
  area(2, 2, 2, 3),
  area(3, 2, 4, 3)
)
# to view the design, run
# plot(design)

# Combine plots
plot <- row_annotation + sample_clusters_annotation +
  sample_types_annotation + heatmap +
  plot_layout(design = design, guides = "collect", # Specify
  layout, collect legends

  # Adjust widths and heights to align plots.
  # When annotation plot is larger, it might not
  # fit into its column/row.
  # Then you need to make column/row larger.

  # Relative widths and heights of each column and
  # row:
  # Currently, the width of the first column is 15
  # % and the height of

```

```

# first two rows are 30 % the size of others

# To get this work most of the times, you can
#   ↵ adjust all sizes to be 1, i.e. equal,
# but then the gaps between plots are larger.
widths = c(0.15, 1, 1),
heights = c(0.3, 0.3, 1, 1))

# plot

```

```

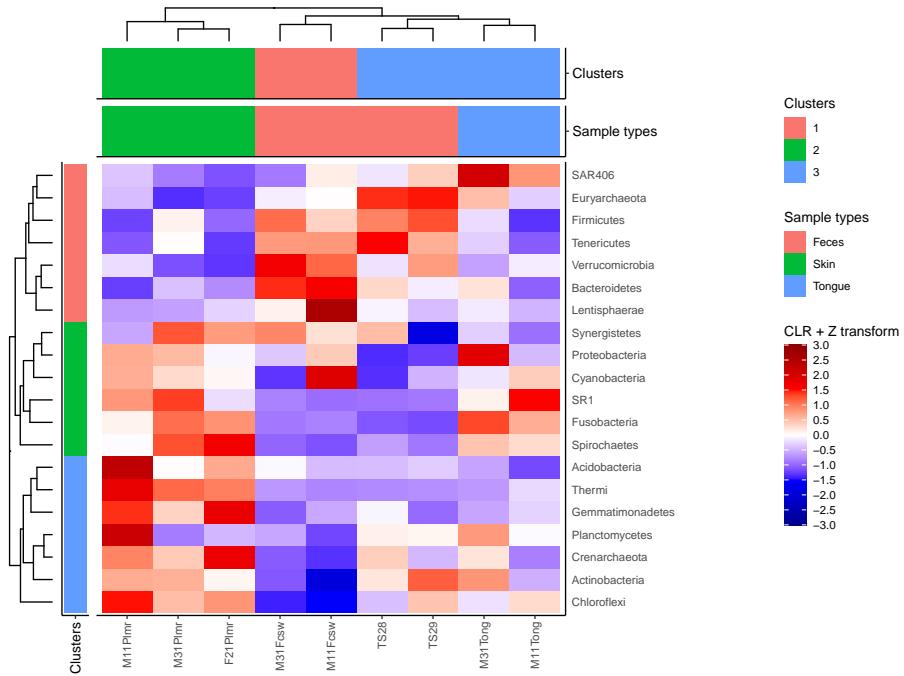
# Create layout
design <- c(
  area(4, 1, 5, 1),
  area(4, 2, 5, 2),
  area(1, 3, 1, 4),
  area(2, 3, 2, 4),
  area(3, 3, 3, 4),
  area(4, 3, 5, 4)
)

# to view the design, run
# plot(design)

# Combine plots
plot <- taxa_tree +
  row_annotation +
  sample_tree +
  sample_clusters_annotation +
  sample_types_annotation +
  heatmap +
  plot_layout(design = design, guides = "collect", # Specify
  ↵ layout, collect legends
    widths = c(0.2, 0.15, 1, 1, 1),
    heights = c(0.1, 0.15, 0.15, 0.25, 1, 1))

plot

```



Heatmaps find several other applications in biclustering and multi-assay analyses, that are discussed in chapters 10 and @ref(multi-assay\_analyses), where the packages *cobiclus* and *MOFA2* are of interest.

## Session Info

View session info

```
R version 4.2.1 (2022-06-23)
Platform: x86_64-pc-linux-gnu (64-bit)
Running under: Ubuntu 20.04.4 LTS

Matrix products: default
BLAS: /usr/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/openblas-pthread/libblas.so.3
LAPACK: /usr/lib/x86_64-linux-gnu/openblas-pthread/liblapack.so.3

locale:
[1] LC_CTYPE=en_US.UTF-8          LC_NUMERIC=C
[3] LC_TIME=en_US.UTF-8           LC_COLLATE=en_US.UTF-8
[5] LC_MONETARY=en_US.UTF-8      LC_MESSAGES=en_US.UTF-8
```

```

[7] LC_PAPER=en_US.UTF-8           LC_NAME=C
[9] LC_ADDRESS=C                  LC_TELEPHONE=C
[11] LC_MEASUREMENT=en_US.UTF-8   LC_IDENTIFICATION=C

attached base packages:
[1] stats4    stats     graphics grDevices utils      datasets  methods
[8] base

other attached packages:
[1] ggpubr_0.4.0                 ggtree_3.4.4
[3] ape_5.6-2                    pheatmap_1.0.12
[5] reshape2_1.4.4               sechm_1.4.1
[7] miaViz_1.5.1                ggraph_2.0.6
[9] patchwork_1.1.2              scatter_1.24.0
[11] scuttle_1.6.3               mia_1.5.16
[13] MultiAssayExperiment_1.22.0 TreeSummarizedExperiment_2.1.4
[15] Biostrings_2.64.1            XVector_0.36.0
[17] SingleCellExperiment_1.18.1 SummarizedExperiment_1.26.1
[19] Biobase_2.56.0              GenomicRanges_1.48.0
[21] GenomeInfoDb_1.32.4          IRanges_2.30.1
[23] S4Vectors_0.34.0             BiocGenerics_0.42.0
[25] MatrixGenerics_1.8.1         matrixStats_0.62.0-9003
[27] ggplot2_3.3.6                BiocStyle_2.24.0
[29] rebook_1.6.0

loaded via a namespace (and not attached):
[1] backports_1.4.1              circlize_0.4.15
[3] plyr_1.8.7                   igraph_1.3.5
[5] lazyeval_0.2.2               splines_4.2.1
[7] BiocParallel_1.30.3           digest_0.6.29
[9] foreach_1.5.2                yulab.utils_0.0.5
[11] htmltools_0.5.3              viridis_0.6.2
[13] fansi_1.0.3                 magrittr_2.0.3
[15] memoise_2.0.1               ScaledMatrix_1.4.1
[17] cluster_2.1.4                doParallel_1.0.17
[19] DECIPHER_2.24.0              ComplexHeatmap_2.12.1
[21] graphlayouts_0.8.2            colorspace_2.0-3
[23] blob_1.2.3                  ggrepel_0.9.1
[25] xfun_0.33                   dplyr_1.0.10
[27] crayon_1.5.2                RCurl_1.98-1.9
[29] jsonlite_1.8.2              graph_1.74.0
[31] iterators_1.0.14             glue_1.6.2
[33] polyclip_1.10-0             registry_0.5-1
[35] gtable_0.3.1                zlibbioc_1.42.0
[37] V8_4.2.1                     GetoptLong_1.0.5
[39] DelayedArray_0.22.0           car_3.1-0

```

```
[41] BiocSingular_1.12.0          shape_1.4.6
[43] abind_1.4-5                 scales_1.2.1
[45] DBI_1.1.3                  rstatix_0.7.0
[47] randomcoloR_1.1.0.1        Rcpp_1.0.9
[49] viridisLite_0.4.1          clue_0.3-61
[51] decontam_1.16.0            gridGraphics_0.5-1
[53] tidytree_0.4.1             bit_4.0.4
[55] rsvd_1.0.5                 RColorBrewer_1.1-3
[57] dir.expiry_1.4.0           ellipsis_0.3.2
[59] pkgconfig_2.0.3            XML_3.99-0.11
[61] farver_2.1.1               CodeDepends_0.6.5
[63] utf8_1.2.2                 labeling_0.4.2
[65] ggplotify_0.1.0            tidyselect_1.1.2
[67] rlang_1.0.6                munsell_0.5.0
[69] tools_4.2.1                cachem_1.0.6
[71] cli_3.4.1                  DirichletMultinomial_1.38.0
[73] generics_0.1.3             RSQLite_2.2.18
[75] broom_1.0.1                evaluate_0.16
[77] stringr_1.4.1              fastmap_1.1.0
[79] yaml_2.3.5                 knitr_1.40
[81] bit64_4.0.5                tidygraph_1.2.2
[83] purrr_0.3.4                nlme_3.1-159
[85] sparseMatrixStats_1.8.0     aplot_0.1.7
[87] compiler_4.2.1              curl_4.3.2
[89] beeswarm_0.4.0              filelock_1.0.2
[91] png_0.1-7                  ggsignif_0.6.3
[93] treeio_1.20.2              tibble_3.1.8
[95] tweenr_2.0.2               stringi_1.7.8
[97] highr_0.9                  lattice_0.20-45
[99] Matrix_1.5-1               vegan_2.6-2
[101] permute_0.9-7             vctrs_0.4.2
[103] pillar_1.8.1               lifecycle_1.0.2
[105] BiocManager_1.30.18        GlobalOptions_0.1.2
[107] BiocNeighbors_1.14.0       cowplot_1.1.1
[109] bitops_1.0-7               irlba_2.3.5.1
[111] seriation_1.3.6           R6_2.5.1
[113] TSP_1.2-1                 bookdown_0.29
[115] gridExtra_2.3              viper_0.4.5
[117] codetools_0.2-18          MASS_7.3-58.1
[119] assertthat_0.2.1          rjson_0.2.21
[121] withr_2.5.0               GenomeInfoDbData_1.2.8
[123] mgcv_1.8-40                parallel_4.2.1
[125] grid_4.2.1                 ggrepel_0.0.7
[127] beachmat_2.12.0            tidyverse_1.2.1
[129] rmarkdown_2.16               DelayedMatrixStats_1.18.1
[131] carData_3.0-5              Cairo_1.6-0
```

[133] Rtsne\_0.16  
[135] ggforce\_0.4.1

ggnewscale\_0.4.7  
ggbeeswarm\_0.6.0

# **Part III**

# **Appendix**



# Chapter 15

## Resources

### 15.1 Data containers

#### 15.1.1 Resources for TreeSummarizedExperiment

- SingleCellExperiment (Lun and Risso, 2020)
  - Online tutorial
  - Project page
- SummarizedExperiment (Morgan et al., 2020)
  - Online tutorial
  - Project page
- TreeSummarizedExperiment (Huang, 2020)
  - Online tutorial
  - Project page
  - Publication: (Huang et al., 2021)

#### 15.1.2 Other relevant containers

- DataFrame which behaves similarly to `data.frame`, yet efficient and fast when used with large datasets.
- DNAString along with DNAStringSet, RNAString and RNAStringSet efficient storage and handling of long biological sequences are offered within the Biostings package.
- GenomicRanges offers an efficient representation and manipulation of genomic annotations and alignments, see e.g. GRanges and GRangesList at An Introduction to the GenomicRangesPackage.

NGS Analysis Basics provides a walk-through of the above-mentioned features with detailed examples.

### 15.1.3 Alternative containers for microbiome data

The `phyloseq` package and class became the first widely used data container for microbiome data science in R. Many methods for taxonomic profiling data are readily available for this class. We provide here a short description how `phyloseq` and `*Experiment` classes relate to each other.

`assays` : This slot is similar to `otu_table` in `phyloseq`. In a `SummarizedExperiment` object multiple assays, raw counts, transformed counts can be stored. See also `MultiAssayExperiment` for storing data from multiple `experiments` such as RNASeq, Proteomics, etc. `rowData` : This slot is similar to `tax_table` in `phyloseq` to store taxonomic information. `colData` : This slot is similar to `sample_data` in `phyloseq` to store information related to samples. `rowTree` : This slot is similar to `phy_tree` in `phyloseq` to store phylogenetic tree.

In this book, you will come across terms like `FeatureIDs` and `SampleIDs`. `FeatureIDs` : These are basically OTU/ASV ids which are row names in `assays` and `rowData`. `SampleIDs` : As the name suggests, these are sample ids which are column names in `assays` and row names in `colData`.

`FeatureIDs` and `SampleIDs` are used but the technical terms `rownames` and `colnames` are encouraged to be used, since they relate to actual objects we work with.

### 15.1.4 Resources for phyloseq

The (Tree)SummarizedExperiment objects can be converted into the alternative `phyloseq` format, for which further methods are available.

- List of R tools for microbiome analysis
- `phyloseq`
- microbiome tutorial
- microbiomeutilities
- Bioconductor Workflow for Microbiome Data Analysis: from raw reads to community analyses (Callahan et al. F1000, 2016).

## 15.2 R programming resources

If you are new to R, you could try `swirl` for a kickstart to R programming. Further support resources are available through the Bioconductor project.

- R programming basics: Base R
- Basics of R programming: Base R
- R cheat sheets
- R visualization with ggplot2
- R graphics cookbook

Rmarkdown

- Rmarkdown tips

RStudio

- RStudio cheat sheet

### 15.2.1 Bioconductor Classes

#### S4 system

S4 class system has brought several useful features to the object-oriented programming paradigm within R, and it is constantly deployed in R/Bioconductor packages.

Online Document:

- Hervé Pagès, A quick overview of the S4 class system.
- Laurent Gatto, A practical tutorial on S4 programming
- John M. Chambers. How S4 Methods Work

Books:

- John M. Chambers. Software for Data Analysis: Programming with R. Springer, New York, 2008. ISBN-13 978-0387759357.
- I Robert Gentleman. R Programming for Bioinformatics. Chapman & Hall/CRC, New York, 2008. ISBN-13 978-1420063677

## 15.3 Reproducible reporting with Rmarkdown

Reproducible reporting is the starting point for robust interactive data science. You can perform the following tasks to get started.

- If you are entirely new to Markdown, take this 10 minute tutorial to get introduced to the most important functions within Markdown. Then experiment with different options with Rmarkdown

- Create a Rmarkdown template in RStudio, and render it into a document (markdown, PDF, docx or other format). In case you are new to Rmarkdown Rstudio provides resources to learn about the use cases and the basics of Rmarkdown.
- Further examples are tips for Rmarkdown are available in the online tutorial to reproducible reporting by Dr. C Titus Brown.

**Figure sources:**

**Original article** - Huang R *et al.* (2021) TreeSummarizedExperiment: a S4 class for data with hierarchical structure. F1000Research 9:1246.

**Reference Sequence slot extension** - Lahti L *et al.* (2020) Upgrading the R/Bioconductor ecosystem for microbiome research F1000Research 9:1464 (slides).

# Chapter 16

## Extra material

### 16.1 Interactive 3D Plots

```
# Installing required packages
if (!require(rgl)){
  BiocManager::install("rgl")
}
if (!require(plotly)){
  BiocManager::install("plotly")
}
```

```
library(knitr)
library(rgl)
knitr::knit_hooks$set(webgl = hook_webgl)
```

In this section we make a 3D version of the earlier Visualizing the most dominant genus on PCoA, with the help of the plotly R package.

```
# Importing necessary libraries
library(curatedMetagenomicData)
library(dplyr)
library(DT)
library(mia)
library(scater)

# Querying the data
tse <- sampleMetadata |>
```

```

filter(age >= 18) |> # taking only data of age 18 or above
filter(!is.na(alcohol)) |> # excluding missing values
select(where(~ !all(is.na(.x)))) |>
returnSamples("relative_abundance")

tse_Genus <- agglomerateByRank(tse, rank="genus")
tse_Genus <- addPerSampleDominantTaxa(tse_Genus,
  assay_name="relative_abundance", name = "dominant_taxa")

# Performing PCoA with Bray-Curtis dissimilarity.
tse_Genus <- runMDS(tse_Genus, FUN = vegan::vegdist, ncomponents
  = 3,
  name = "PCoA_BC", exprs_values =
  "relative_abundance")

# Getting the 6 top taxa
top_taxa <- getTopTaxa(tse_Genus,top = 6, assay_name =
  "relative_abundance")

# Naming all the rest of non top-taxa as "Other"
most_abundant <- lapply(colData(tse_Genus)$dominant_taxa,
  function(x){if (x %in% top_taxa) {x} else
  {"Other"}})

# Storing the previous results as a new column within colData
colData(tse_Genus)$most_abundant <- as.character(most_abundant)

# Calculating percentage of the most abundant
most_abundant_freq <- table(as.character(most_abundant))
most_abundant_percent <-
  round(most_abundant_freq/sum(most_abundant_freq)*100, 1)

# Retrieving the explained variance
e <- attr(reducedDim(tse_Genus, "PCoA_BC"), "eig");
var_explained <- e/sum(e[e>0])*100

```

Interactive 3D visualization of the most dominant genus on PCoA.

Note that labels at legend can be used to visualize one or more Genus separately (double click to isolate one from the others, or toggle to select multiple ones).

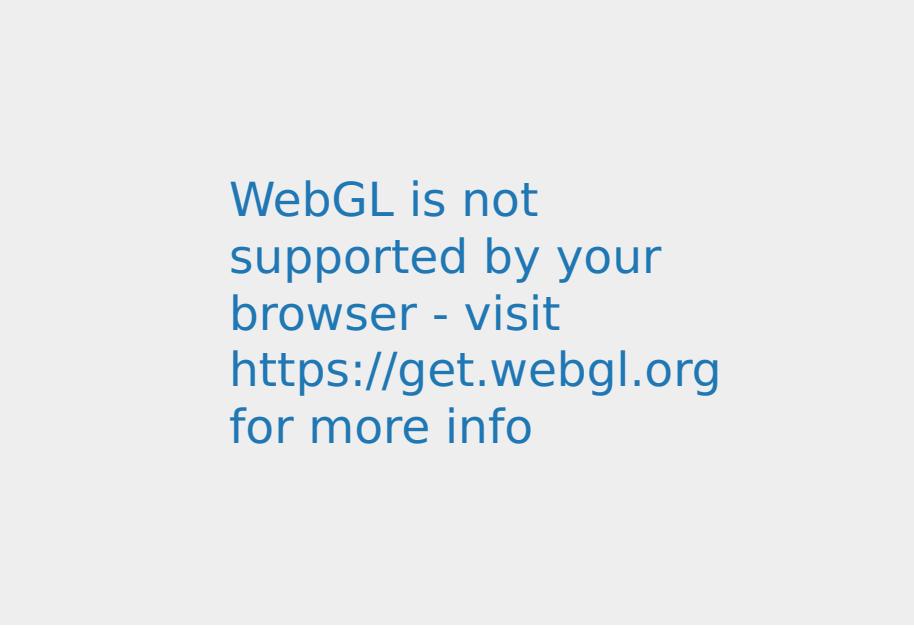
```

library(plotly)

# 3D Visualization
reduced_data <- as.data.frame(reducedDim(tse_Genus)[,])

```

```
names(reduced_data) <- c("PC1", "PC2", "PC3")
plot_ly(reduced_data, x=~PC1, y=~PC2, z=~PC3) %>%
  add_markers(color=sapply(strsplit(colData(tse_Genus)$most_abundant,
  "_"), tail, 1), size=5,
  colors=c("black", "blue", "lightblue", "darkgray",
  "magenta", "darkgreen", "red")) %>%
layout(scene=list(xaxis=list(title = paste("PC1
  (" , round(var_explained[1],1), "%)")),
  yaxis=list(title = paste("PC2
  (" , round(var_explained[2],1), "%)")),
  zaxis=list(title = paste("PC3
  (" , round(var_explained[3],1), "%))))
```



WebGL is not supported by your browser - visit <https://get.webgl.org> for more info

## 16.2 PERMANOVA comparison

```
library("vegan")
## Loading required package: permute
## Loading required package: lattice
```

```

## This is vegan 2.6-2

data("enterotype")
enterotype <- transformSamples(enterotype, method =
  ~ "relabundance")
# Drop those samples that do not have meta data
enterotype <-
  enterotype[ , !rowSums(is.na(colData(enterotype)[,
  ~ c("Nationality", "Gender", "ClinicalStatus")])) > 0 ]
# Multiple variables, by = "margin"
set.seed(75)
adonis2(t(assay(enterotype , "relabundance")) ~ Nationality +
  ~ Gender + ClinicalStatus,
  by = "margin",
  data = colData(enterotype),
  permutations = 99)

## Permutation test for adonis under reduced model
## Marginal effects of terms
## Permutation: free
## Number of permutations: 99
##
## adonis2(formula = t(assay(enterotype, "relabundance")) ~ Nationality + Gender + Clin
##          Df SumOfSqs      R2      F Pr(>F)
## Nationality     4   0.7933  0.19338  2.0894   0.04 *
## Gender         1   0.1230  0.02999  1.2963   0.29
## ClinicalStatus 3   0.2412  0.05879  0.8469   0.53
## Residual       29  2.7527  0.67101
## Total          38  4.1023  1.00000
## ---
## Signif. codes:  0 '***' 0.001 '**' 0.01 '*' 0.05 '.' 0.1 ' ' 1

# Multiple variables, by = "margin"
set.seed(75)
adonis2(t(assay(enterotype , "relabundance")) ~ ClinicalStatus +
  ~ Nationality + Gender,
  by = "margin",
  data = colData(enterotype ),
  permutations = 99)

## Permutation test for adonis under reduced model
## Marginal effects of terms
## Permutation: free

```

```

## Number of permutations: 99
##
## adonis2(formula = t(assay(enterotype, "relabundance")) ~ ClinicalStatus + Nationality + Gender
##           Df SumOfSqs      R2      F Pr(>F)
## ClinicalStatus  3   0.2412 0.05879 0.8469  0.53
## Nationality    4   0.7933 0.19338 2.0894  0.04 *
## Gender         1   0.1230 0.02999 1.2963  0.29
## Residual       29   2.7527 0.67101
## Total          38   4.1023 1.00000
## ---
## Signif. codes:  0 '***' 0.001 '**' 0.01 '*' 0.05 '.' 0.1 ' ' 1

# Multiple variables, default: by = "terms"
set.seed(75)
adonis2(t(assay(enterotype , "relabundance")) ~ Nationality +
  + Gender + ClinicalStatus,
  + data = colData(enterotype ),
  + permutations = 99)

## Permutation test for adonis under reduced model
## Terms added sequentially (first to last)
## Permutation: free
## Number of permutations: 99
##
## adonis2(formula = t(assay(enterotype, "relabundance")) ~ Nationality + Gender + ClinicalStatus
##           Df SumOfSqs      R2      F Pr(>F)
## Nationality    5   1.0046 0.24490 2.1168  0.04 *
## Gender         1   0.1038 0.02530 1.0934  0.39
## ClinicalStatus 3   0.2412 0.05879 0.8469  0.53
## Residual       29   2.7527 0.67101
## Total          38   4.1023 1.00000
## ---
## Signif. codes:  0 '***' 0.001 '**' 0.01 '*' 0.05 '.' 0.1 ' ' 1

# Multiple variables, default: by = "terms"
set.seed(75)
adonis2(t(assay(enterotype , "relabundance")) ~ ClinicalStatus +
  + Nationality + Gender,
  + data = colData(enterotype),
  + permutations = 99)

## Permutation test for adonis under reduced model
## Terms added sequentially (first to last)
## Permutation: free

```

```
## Number of permutations: 99
##
## adonis2(formula = t(assay(enterotype, "relabundance")) ~ ClinicalStatus + Nationality)
##          Df SumOfSqs      R2      F Pr(>F)
## ClinicalStatus    4   0.5000 0.12189 1.3169   0.20
## Nationality      4   0.7265 0.17710 1.9135   0.05 *
## Gender            1   0.1230 0.02999 1.2963   0.29
## Residual          29  2.7527 0.67101
## Total             38  4.1023 1.00000
## ---
## Signif. codes:  0 '***' 0.001 '**' 0.01 '*' 0.05 '.' 0.1 ' ' 1
```

# Chapter 17

## Acknowledgments

This work would not have been possible without the countless contributions and interactions with other researchers, developers, and users. We express our gratitude to the entire Bioconductor community for developing this high-quality open research software repository for life science analytics, continuously pushing the limits in emerging fields (Gentleman et al., 2004, Huber et al. (2015)).

The base ecosystem of data containers, packages, and tutorials was set up as a collaborative effort by Tuomas Borman, Henrik Eckermann, Chouaib Benchraka, Chandler Ross, Shigdel Rajesh, Yağmur Şimşek, Giulio Benedetti, Sudarshan Shetty, Felix Ernst, and Leo Lahti, with further support from the COST Action network on Statistical and Machine Learning Techniques for Human Microbiome Studies (ML4microbiome) (Moreno-Indias et al., 2021). The framework is based on the *TreeSummarizedExperiment* data container created by Ruizhu Huang and others (Huang, 2020), and on the MultiAssayExperiment by Marcel Ramos et al. (Ramos et al., 2017). The idea of using these containers as a basis for microbiome data science was initially advanced by the groundwork of Domenick Braccia, Héctor Corrada Bravo and others, and subsequently brought together with other microbiome data science developers (Shetty and Lahti, 2019).

Ample demonstration data resources have been made available as the curatedMetagenomicData project by Edoardo Pasolli, Lucas Schiffer, Levi Waldron and others (Pasolli et al., 2017) adding important support. A number of other contributors have advanced the ecosystem further, and will be acknowledged in the individual packages, pull requests, issues, and other work.

The work has drawn inspiration from many sources, most notably from the work on *phyloseq* by Paul McMurdie and Susan Holmes (McMurdie and Holmes, 2013) who pioneered the work on rigorous and reproducible microbiome data science ecosystems in R/Bioconductor. The phyloseq framework continues to provide a vast array of complementary packages and methods for microbiome studies,

and we aim to support full interoperability.

The open source books by Susan Holmes and Wolfgang Huber, *Modern Statistics for Modern Biology* (Holmes and Huber, 2019) and by Garret Grolemund and Hadley Wickham, *the R for Data Science* (Grolemund and Wickham, 2017), and Richard McElreath’s *Statistical Rethinking* and the associated online resources by Solomon Kurz (McElreath, 2020) are key references that advanced reproducible data science training and dissemination. The *Orchestrating Single-Cell Analysis with Bioconductor, or OSCA* book by Robert Amezquita, Aaron Lun, Stephanie Hicks, and Raphael Gottardo (Amezquita et al., 2020a) has implemented closely related work on the *SummarizedExperiment* data container and its derivatives in the field of single cell sequencing studies. Many approaches used in this book have been derived from the OSCA framework, with various adjustments and extensions dedicated to microbiome data science.

# Chapter 18

## Exercises

Here you can find assignments on different topics.

### Tips for exercises:

- Add comments that explain what each line or lines of code do. This helps you and others to understand your code and find bugs. Furthermore, it is easier for you to reuse the code, and it promotes transparency.
- Interpret results by comparing them to literature. List main findings, so that results can easily be understood by others without advanced data analytics knowledge.
- Avoid hard-coding. Use variables which get values in the beginning of the pipeline. That way it is easier for you to modify parameters and reuse the code.

### 18.1 Workflows

#### 18.1.1 Reproducible reporting

1. Create a Quarto file (e.g. Rstudio has ready-made templates for this).
2. Add a code chunk and give a name for it.
3. Render (or knit) the file into pdf or html format
4. Import e.g., iris dataset, and add a dotplot with a title.
5. Create another code chunk and plot.
6. Adjust the size of the figure, and choose from the options that the code chunk will not be shown in the report.
7. Add some text.
8. Add an R command within the text.
9. Update HTML file from the qmd file.

For tips on Quarto, see Quarto tutorial

## 18.2 Data containers

### 18.2.1 TreeSummarizedExperiment data exploration

1. (Install the latest development version of mia from GitHub)
2. Load experimental dataset from mia.
3. What are the dimensions? (How many samples there are, and how many taxa in each taxonomic rank)?
4. Calculate library size.
5. Summarize sample metadata variables. (How many age groups, how they are distributed? 0%, 25%, 50%, 75%, and 100% quantiles of library size?)
6. Create two histograms. Another shows the distribution of absolute counts, another shows how CLR transformed values are distributed.
7. Visualize how relative abundances are distributed between taxa in samples.

Useful functions: nrow, ncol, dim, summary, table, quantile, unique, transformSamples, ggplot, wilcox.test, addPerCellQC, agglomerateByRank, plotAbundance

### 18.2.2 TreeSummarizedExperiment (TreeSE) data import

Import data from CSV files to TreeSE.

1. Import the data files in R
2. Construct a TreeSE data object
3. Check that importing is done correctly. E.g., choose random samples and features, and check that their values equal between raw files and TreeSE.

Useful functions: DataFrame, TreeSummarizedExperiment, matrix, rownames, colnames, SimpleList

### 18.2.3 Introduction to MultiAssayExperiment (MAE)

1. Create TreeSE data containers from individual CSV files.
2. Combine TreeSE into MAE.
3. Check that each individual experiment of MAE equals corresponding TreeSE.
4. Take a subset of MAE (e.g., 10 first samples), and observe the subsetted MAE.

Useful functions: DataFrame, TreeSummarizedExperiment, matrix, rownames, colnames, MultiAssayExperiment, ExperimentList, SimpleList

## 18.3 Data manipulation

### 18.3.1 Prevalent and core features

1. Estimate prevalence for your chosen feature (row, taxonomic group)
2. Identify all prevalent features and subset the data accordingly
3. Report the thresholds and the dimensionality of the data before and after subsetting
4. Visualize prevalence

Useful functions: getPrevalence, getPrevalentTaxa, subsetByPrevalentTaxa

### 18.3.2 Taxonomic levels

1. List the available taxonomic ranks in the data
2. Split the data into alternative experiments by rank (altExp)
3. Merge the data to Phylum level; report dimensionality before and after this

Useful functions: taxonomyRanks, agglomerateByRank, mergeRows, splitByRank

## 18.4 Differential abundance

### 18.4.1 Univariate analyses

1. Get the abundances for an individual feature (taxonomic group / row)
2. Visualize the abundances per group with boxplot / jitterplot
3. Is the difference significant (Wilcoxon test)?
4. Is the difference significant (linear model with covariates)?
5. How do transformations affect the outcome (log10, clr..)?
6. Get p-values for all features (taxa), for instance with a for loop
7. Do multiple testing correction
8. Compare the results from different tests with a scatterplot

Useful functions: [], ggplot2::geom\_boxplot, ggplot2::geom\_jitter, wilcox.test, lm.test, transformSamples, p.adjust

### 18.4.2 Differential abundance analysis

1. install the latest development version of mia from GitHub.
2. Load experimental dataset from mia.
3. Compare abundances of each taxa between groups. First, use Wilcoxon or Kruskall-Wallis test. Then use some other method dedicated to microbiome data.
4. Summarize findings by plotting a taxa vs samples heatmap. Add column annotation that tells the group of each sample, and row annotation that tells whether the difference of certain taxa was statistically significant.
5. Choose statistically significant taxa and visualize their abundances with boxplot & jitterplot.

Useful functions: wilcox.test, kruskal.test, ggplot, pheatmap, ComplexHeatMap::Heatmap, ancombc, aldex2, maaslin2, agglomerateByRank, transformSamples, transformFeatures, subsetByPrevalentTaxa

## 18.5 Alpha diversity

### 18.5.1 Alpha diversity basics

1. Calculate alpha diversity indices
2. Test if data agglomeration to higher taxonomic ranks affects the indices
3. Look for differences in alpha diversity between groups or correlation with a continuous variable

Useful functions: estimateDiversity, colSums, agglomerateByRank, kruskal.test, cor

### 18.5.2 Alpha diversity extra

1. Estimate Shannon diversity for the data
2. Try also another diversity index and compare the results with a scatterplot
3. Compare Shannon diversity between groups (boxplot)
4. Is diversity significantly different between vegan and mixed diet?
5. Calculate and visualize library size, compare with diversity

Useful functions: estimateDiversity, colSums, geom\_point, geom\_boxplot

## 18.6 Community composition

### 18.6.1 Beta diversity basics

1. Visualize community variation with different methods (PCA, MDS, NMDS, etc.) with `plotReduceDim` and with different dissimilarities and transformations, `plot` also other than the first two axes.
2. Use PERMANOVA to test differences in beta diversity. You can also try including continuous and/or categorical covariates
3. If there are statistical differences in PERMANOVA, test PERMDISP2 (`betadisper` function)
4. Do clustering
5. Try RDA to test the variance explained by external variables

### 18.6.2 Beta diversity extra

1. Install the latest development version of mia from GitHub.
2. Load experimental dataset from mia.
3. Create a PCoA with Aitchison dissimilarities. How much coordinate 1 explains the differences? How about coordinate 2?
4. Create dbRDA with Bray-Curtis dissimilarities on relative abundances. Use PERMANOVA. Can differences between samples be explained with variables of sample meta data?
5. Analyze diets' association on beta diversity. Calculate dbRDA and then PERMANOVA. Visualize coefficients. Which taxa's abundances differ the most between samples?
6. Interpret your results. Is there association between community composition and location? What are those taxa that differ the most; find information from literature.

Useful functions: `runMDS`, `runRDA`, `anova.cca`, `transformSamples`, `agglomerateByRank`, `ggplot`, `plotReducedDim`, `vegan::adonis2`

## 18.7 Visualization

### 18.7.1 Multivariate ordination

1. Load experimental dataset from mia.
2. Create PCoA with Bray-Curtis dissimilarities
3. Create PCA with Aitchison dissimilarities
4. Visualize and compare both
5. Test other transformations, dissimilarities, and ordination methods

Useful functions: runMDS, runNMDS, transformSamples, ggplot, plotReducedDim

### 18.7.2 Heatmap visualization

1. Load experimental dataset from mia.
2. Visualize abundances with heatmap
3. Visualize abundances with heatmap after CLR + Z transformation

See the OMA book for examples.

## 18.8 Multiomics

### 18.8.1 Introduction to multiomics

1. Load experimental dataset from microbiomeDataSets (e.g., HintikkaXO-Data).
2. Analyze correlations between experiments. (Taxa vs lipids, Taxa vs biomarkers, Lipids vs biomarkers)
3. Agglomerate taxa data.
4. Apply CLR to taxa data, apply log10 to lipids and biomarkers.
5. Perform cross-correlation analyses and visualize results with heatmaps. (Use Spearman coefficients)
6. Is there significant correlations? Interpret your results.

Useful functions: pheatmap, ComplexHeatMap::Heatmap, ggplot, transformSamples, testExperimentCrossAssociation

# Bibliography

- A, C. (1984). Non-parametric estimation of the number of classes in a population. *Scandinavian Journal of Statistics*, 11(4):265–270.
- A, C. and SM, L. (1992). Estimating the number of classes via sample coverage. *Journal of the American statistical Association*, 87(417):210–217.
- Amezquita, R., Lun, A., Hicks, S., and Gottardo, R. (2020a). *Orchestrating Single-Cell Analysis with Bioconductor*. Bioconductor.
- Amezquita, R. A., Lun, A. T., Becht, E., Carey, V. J., Carpp, L. N., Geistlinger, L., Marini, F., Rue-Albrecht, K., Risso, D., Soneson, C., Waldron, L., Pagès, H., Smith, M. L., Huber, W., Morgan, M., Gottardo, R., and Hicks, S. C. (2020b). Orchestrating single-cell analysis with bioconductor. *Nature Methods*, 17:137–145.
- Anderson, M. J. (2001). A new method for non-parametric multivariate analysis of variance. *Austral Ecology*, 26(1):32–46.
- Anderson, M. J. (2006). Distance-based tests for homogeneity of multivariate dispersions. *Biometrics*, 62:245–253.
- Argelaguet, R. e. a. (2018). Multi-omics factor analysis—a framework for unsupervised integration of multi-omics data sets. *Molecular Systems Biology*, 14(6):e8124.
- Callahan, B., McMurdie, P., and Holmes, S. (2020). *dada2: Accurate, high-resolution sample inference from amplicon sequencing data*. R package version 1.18.0.
- Davis, N. M., Proctor, D. M., Holmes, S. P., Relman, D. A., and Callahan, B. J. (2018). Simple statistical identification and removal of contaminant sequences in marker-gene and metagenomics data. *Microbiome*, 6(1):1–14.
- Ernst, F. G., Shetty, S., and Lahti, L. (2020). *mia: Microbiome analysis*. R package version 0.98.15.
- Faith, D. P. (1992). Conservation evaluation and phylogenetic diversity. *Biological Conservation*, 61(1):10.

- Gentleman, R. C., Carey, V. J., Bates, D. M., Bolstad, B., Dettling, M., Dudoit, S., Ellis, B., Gautier, L., Ge, Y., Gentry, J., Hornik, K., Hothorn, T., Huber, W., Iacus, S., Irizarry, R., Leisch, F., Li, C., Maechler, M., Rossini, A. J., Sawitzki, G., Smith, C., Smyth, G., Tierney, L., Yang, J. Y., and Zhang, J. (2004). Bioconductor: open software development for computational biology and bioinformatics. *Genome Biology*, 5:R80.
- Gloor, G. B., Macklaim, J. M., and Fernandes, A. D. (2016). Displaying Variation in Large Datasets: Plotting a Visual Summary of Effect Sizes. *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics*, 25(3):971–979.
- Grolemund, G. and Wickham, H. (2017). *R for Data Science*. O'Reilly.
- Holmes, S. and Huber, W. (2019). *Modern Statistics for Modern Biology*. Cambridge University Press, New York, NY.
- Huang, R. (2020). *TreeSummarizedExperiment: a S4 Class for Data with Tree Structures*. R package version 1.6.2.
- Huang, R., Soneson, C., Ernst, F. G., et al. (2021). Treesummarizedexperiment: a s4 class for data with hierarchical structure [version 2; peer review: 3 approved]. *F1000Research*, 9:1246.
- Huber, W., Carey, V. J., Gentleman, R., Anders, S., Carlson, M., Carvalho, B. S., Bravo, H. C., Davis, S., Gatto, L., Girke, T., Gottardo, R., Hahne, F., Hansen, K. D., Irizarry, R. A., Lawrence, M., Love, M. I., MacDonald, J., Obenchain, V., Ole's, A. K., Pag'es, H., Reyes, A., Shannon, P., Smyth, G. K., Tenenbaum, D., Waldron, L., and Morgan, M. (2015). Orchestrating high-throughput genomic analysis with Bioconductor. *Nature Methods*, 12(2):115–121.
- Kembel, S. W., Cowan, P. D., Helmus, M. R., Cornwell, W. K., Morlon, H., Ackerly, D. D., Blomberg, S. P., and Webb, C. O. (2010). *Picante: R tools for integrating phylogenies and ecology*. R package version 1.8.2.
- Lahti, L., Salojärvi, J., Salonen, A., Scheffer, M., and de Vos, W. M. (2014). Tipping elements in the human intestinal ecosystem. *Nature Communications*, 2014:1–10.
- Lahti, L., Shetty, S., Ernst, F. M., et al. (2021). *Orchestrating Microbiome Analysis with Bioconductor [beta version]*.
- Lin, H. and Peddada, S. D. (2020). Analysis of compositions of microbiomes with bias correction. *Nat Commun*, 11(1):3514.
- Lun, A. (2021). *bluster: Clustering Algorithms for Bioconductor*. R package version 1.3.0.
- Lun, A. and Risso, D. (2020). *SingleCellExperiment: S4 Classes for Single Cell Data*. R package version 1.12.0.

- Mandal, S., Van Treuren, W., White, R. A., Eggesbø, M., Knight, R., and Peddada, S. D. (2015). Analysis of composition of microbiomes: A novel method for studying microbial composition. *Microbial Ecology in Health & Disease*, 26(0).
- McCarthy, D., Campbell, K., Lun, A., and Wills, Q. (2020). *scater: Single-Cell Analysis Toolkit for Gene Expression Data in R*. R package version 1.18.3.
- McElreath, R. (2020). *Statistical Rethinking*. Chapman and Hall/CRC. with implementation by Solomon Kurz: [https://bookdown.org/ajkurz/Statistical\\_Rethinking\\_recoded/](https://bookdown.org/ajkurz/Statistical_Rethinking_recoded/).
- McInnes, L., Healy, J., and Melville, J. (2018). UMAP: Uniform Manifold Approximation and Projection for Dimension Reduction. *arXiv e-prints*, page arXiv:1802.03426.
- McMurdie, P. J. and Holmes, S. (2013). *phyloseq*: an r package for reproducible interactive analysis and graphics of microbiome census data. *PLoS ONE*, 8:e61217.
- McMurdie, P. J. and Holmes, S. (2014). Waste not, want not: why rarefying microbiome data is inadmissible. *PLoS computational biology*, 10(4):e1003531.
- Moreno-Indias, I., Lahti, L., Nedyalkova, M., Elbere, I., Roshchupkin, G. V., Adilovic, M., Aydemir, O., Bakir-Gungor, B., de Santa Pau, E. C., D'Elia, D., Desai, M. S., Falquet, L., Gundogdu, A., Hron, K., Klammsteiner, T., Lopes, M. B., Zambrano, L. J. M., Marques, C., Mason, M., May, P., Pašić, L., Pio, G., Pongor, S., Promponas, V. J., Przymus, P., Sáez-Rodríguez, J., Sampri, A., Shigdel, R., Stres, B., Suharoschi, R., Truu, J., Truică, C.-O., Vilne, B., Vlachakis, D. P., Yilmaz, E., Zeller, G., Zomer, A., Gómez-Cabrero, D., and Claesson, M. (2021). Statistical and machine learning techniques in human microbiome studies: contemporary challenges and solutions. *Frontiers in Microbiology*, 12:277.
- Morgan, M., Obenchain, V., Hester, J., and Pagès, H. (2020). *SummarizedExperiment: SummarizedExperiment container*. R package version 1.20.0.
- Nearing, J. T., Douglas, G. M., Hayes, M. G., MacDonald, J., Desai, D. K., Allward, N., Jones, C. M. A., Wright, R. J., Dhanani, A. S., Comeau, A. M., and Langille, M. G. I. (2022). Microbiome differential abundance methods produce different results across 38 datasets. *Nature Communications*, 13(1):342.
- Oksanen, J., Blanchet, F. G., Friendly, M., Kindt, R., Legendre, P., McGlinn, D., Minchin, P. R., O'Hara, R. B., Simpson, G. L., Solymos, P., Stevens, M. H. H., Szoecs, E., and Wagner, H. (2020). *vegan: Community Ecology Package*. R package version 2.5-7.
- Pasolli, E., Schiffer, L., Manghi, P., Renson, A., Obenchain, V., Truong, D., Beghini, F., Malik, F., Ramos, M., Dowd, J., Huttenhower, C., Morgan, M.,

- Segata, N., and L, W. (2017). Accessible, curated metagenomic data through experimenthub. *Nature Methods*, 14:1023–1024.
- Pons, P. and Latapy, M. (2006). Computing communities in large networks using random walks. *Journal of Graph Algorithms and Applications*, 10:191–218.
- Quinn, T. P., Gordon-Rodriguez, E., and Erb, I. (2021). A Critique of Differential Abundance Analysis, and Advocacy for an Alternative. *arXiv:2104.07266 [q-bio, stat]*.
- Ramos, M., Schiffer, L., Re, A., Azhar, R., Basunia, A., Cabrera, C. R., Chan, T., Chapman, P., Davis, S., Gomez-Cabrero, D., Culhane, A. C., Haibe-Kains, B., Hansen, K., Kodali, H., Louis, M. S., Mer, A. S., Reister, M., Morgan, M., Carey, V., and Waldron, L. (2017). Software for the integration of multi-omics experiments in bioconductor. *Cancer Research*, 77(21); e39-42.
- Ramos, M. and Waldron, L. (2020). *MultiAssayExperiment: Software for the integration of multi-omics experiments in Bioconductor*. R package version 1.16.0.
- Rousseeuw, P. J. (1987). Silhouettes: A graphical aid to the interpretation and validation of cluster analysis. *Journal of Computational and Applied Mathematics*, 20:53–65.
- Salosensaari, A., Laitinen, V., Havulinna, A., Méric, G., Cheng, S., Perola, M., Valsta, L., Alftan, G., Inouye, M., Watrous, J., Long, T., Salido, R., Sanders, K., Brennan, C., Humphrey, G., Sanders, J., Jain, M., Jousilahti, P., Salomaa, V., and Niiranen, T. (2021). Taxonomic signatures of cause-specific mortality risk in human gut microbiome. *Nature Communications*, 12:1–8.
- Shetty, S. and Lahti, L. (2019). Microbiome data science. *Journal of Biosciences*, 44:115. Preprint: [https://github.com/openresearchlabs/openresearchlabs.github.io/blob/master/public/publication\\_reShetty-MDS.pdf](https://github.com/openresearchlabs/openresearchlabs.github.io/blob/master/public/publication_reShetty-MDS.pdf).
- Sprockett, D. D., Martin, M., Costello, E. K., Burns, A. R., Holmes, S. P., Gurven, M. D., and Relman, D. A. (2020). Microbiota assembly, structure, and dynamics among Tsimane horticulturalists of the Bolivian Amazon. *Nat Commun*, 11(1):3772.
- Vatanen, T., Kostic, A. D., d’Hennezel, E., Siljander, H., Franzosa, E. A., Yassour, M., Kolde, R., Vlamakis, H., Arthur, T. D., Hämäläinen, A.-M., Peet, A., Tillmann, V., Uibo, R., Mokurov, S., Dorshakova, N., Ilonen, J., Virtanen, S. M., Szabo, S. J., Porter, J. A., Lähdesmäki, H., Huttenhower, C., Gevers, D., Cullen, T. W., Knip, M., , and Xavier, R. J. (2016). Variation in microbiome lps immunogenicity contributes to autoimmunity in humans. *Cell*, 165:842–853.

- W, K. S., D, C. P., R, H. M., K, C. W., Helene, M., D, A. D., P, B. S., and O, W. C. (2010). Picante: R tools for integrating phylogenies and ecology. *Bioinformatics*, 26(11):1463–1464.
- Whittaker, R. H. (1960). Vegetation of the siskiyou mountains, oregon and california. *Ecological Monographs*, 30(3):279–338.
- Wright, E. (2020). *DECIPHER: Tools for curating, analyzing, and manipulating biological sequences*. R package version 2.18.1.
- Zhou, H., He, K., Chen, J., and Zhang, X. (2022). LinDA: Linear models for differential abundance analysis of microbiome compositional data. *Genome Biology*, 23(1):95.